



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 00605700 8













SIR JOHN FROISSART'S  
CHRONICLES.

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.  
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,  
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

BY THOMAS JOHNES.

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,  
He mooste reherse, as neigh he can,  
Everich worde, if it be in his charge,  
All speke he never so rudely and so large;  
Or elles he mooste tellen his tale untrewe,  
Or feinen thynges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE SECOND EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,  
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,  
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,  
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. IV.

L O N D O N:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;  
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1805.



op. (V. 2. N. 1. 110/  
05.

Brooke, Printer,  
Paternoster Row.

THE  
CONTENTS  
OF  
THE FOURTH VOLUME.

---

CHAP. I. The Duke of Burgundy marches from the City of Rouen, with the Intention of combating the Duke of Lancaster and the English.—The two Armies are encamped opposite to each other at Tourneheim.	Page 1
II. Sir John Chandos does great Mischief to the Province of Anjou.—He despoils the Estates of the Viscount de Roche-Chouart, except the Fortresses and strong Holds	6
III. The Lord Louis de Sancerre surprises the Earl of Pembroke.—Several of his men are slain, and the Earl is besieged in a House at Puirenou	9
IV. Sir John Chandos comes to the Assistance of the Earl of Pembroke, besieged in Puirenou	16
V. The Death of Queen Philippa of England: She makes three Requests to the King on her Death-bed.—Some Frenchmen, having attacked the English Camp at Tourneheim, are repulsed by Sir Robert de Namur	20

- CHAP. VI. The Duke of Burgundy and his Army  
decamp without a Battle.—The Duke  
of Lancaster returns to Calais - 25
- VII. The Earl of Pembroke, desirous of  
avenging himself for the defeat he  
received at Purennon, makes an in-  
cursion to Amjot.—The Abbey of  
St. Salvin in Poitou is betrayed to  
the French, and forfeited - - 29
- VIII. The County of St. Pol in Picardy is  
pillaged and ruined by the English.—  
Sir Hugh de Chastillon is taken Pri-  
soner - - - 32
- IX. Sir John Chandos is slain in a Skirmish.  
—The French, at first victorious, are  
in the end defeated - - 38
- X. The Lord de Coucy and the Lord de  
Pommiers are unwilling to take Part  
with either Side in this War.—The  
Lords de Maleval and de Marneil  
turn to the French - - - 52
- XI. The Form of the Letter which the  
English King sent into Aquitaine.—  
Chatelheraut is taken by the French,  
and Belleperche is besieged - - 54
- XII. The Earls of Cambridge and Pembroke  
carry off the Mother of the Duke of  
Bourbon with the Garrison of Belle-  
perche.—The Duke of Bourbon takes  
Possession of that Castle - - 62
- XIII. The Four Brothers of France have a  
Meeting.—Their Preparations for  
the War.—The Mother of the Duke  
of Bourbon obtains her Liberty.—A  
Treaty entered into between the  
Kings of France and Navarre - 67

CHAP.

- ▼
- CHAP. XIV.** Sir Bertrand du Guesclin leaves Spain and arrives at Toulouse, where the Duke of Anjou receives him with great Joy.—They take together several Castles from the English - 72
- XV.** The Duke of Berry invades Limousin - - - - 76
- XVI.** A Truce is established between England and Scotland.—Sir Robert Knolles over-runs, burns and ravages the whole countries of Picardy and the Vermandois - 80
- XVII.** The Garrison of Noyon make the English Prisoners who had set fire to Pont L'Eveque.—The King of France sends for Sir Bertrand du Guesclin - - - - 88
- XVIII.** The Prince of Wales assembles his Army at Cognac, where he meets his Brother the Duke of Lancaster.—The Dukes of Anjou and Berry break up their Expedition, Limoges having turned to the French - - - - 90
- XIX.** The Prince of Wales, anxious to recover Limoges, lays siege to it, and undermines it - - - - 94
- XX.** Sir Robert Knolles, in continuing his Incursions through different Provinces of France, advances near to Paris.—A Knight of his Army, in returning from a valiant Expedition, is slain by a Butcher of Paris - - - - 97



- CHAP. XXI.** Sir Bertrand Du Guesclin takes the  
Fortress of St. Yrier in Limou-  
sin.—The Prince of Wales re-con-  
quers Limoges - - 101
- XXII.** Sir Bertrand du Guesclin is made  
Constable of France - - 106
- XXIII.** Sir Bertrand du Guesclin and the  
Lord de Clisson defeat the Forces  
of Sir Robert Knolles at Pont-  
Valin - - 110
- XXIV.** Sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt is made  
Prisoner and ransomed.—Sir Ray-  
mond de Marneil, a Partisan of  
France, is taken, and in imminent  
Danger, but saved by his Keeper - 116
- XXV.** The Prince of Wales, having lost by  
Death his eldest Son, gives up the  
Duchy of Aquitaine to the Care  
of the Duke of Lancaster.—Four  
Knights of Brittany take the Castle  
of Mont-Paon - - 118
- XXVI.** The Four Knights defend themselves  
against the Duke of Lancaster.—  
The Duke, on taking the Place,  
admits them to ransom - - 124
- XXVII.** The Duke of Lancaster disbands his  
Army, and returns to Bourdeaux.—  
The Lord de Pons turns to the  
French Party - - 129
- XXVIII.** The English take the Castle of Mont-  
contour - - 131
- XXIX.** Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, constable  
of France, besieges the Town of  
Uses, which surrenders to him  
upon Capitulation - - 134

- CHAP. XXX.** The King of England's Anger against Sir Robert Knolles is appeased.—Peace is made between the English and Flemings - 138
- XXXI.** The King of Majorca is ransomed from King Henry of Spain.—He makes War on the King of Aragon - - - 143
- XXXII.** The Duke of Lancaster espouses the eldest Daughter of the late Don Pedro, King of Spain.—Treaties of Alliance are entered into between the Kings of France and Spain - - - 145
- XXXIII.** The Duke of Lancaster appoints Governors in Guienne: He returns to England, and carries his Lady with him.—Sir Walter Manny dies in London - - 149
- XXXIV.** The King of England appoints the Earl of Pembroke Governor of Aquitaine.—The Spaniards, being Allies of France, attack him at Sea, off La Rochelle - - 151
- XXXV.** The Inhabitants of La Rochelle refuse to assist the Earl of Pembroke.—The Sénéchal and the Lord de Tannaybouton, with others, come to his Aid - 157
- XXXVI.** The Earl of Pembroke is defeated, and made Prisoner by the Spaniards.—They sail from La Rochelle with their Prisoners.—The Captal de Buch arrives there, but too late - - - 159

CHAP.

- CHAP. XXXVII.** Evan of Wales defeats the English off the Island of Guernsey. — The King of France sends him to Spain to seek for Men at Arms, to lay siege to La Rochelle - - 164
- XXXVIII.** The King of England is much cast down at the Capture of the Earl of Pembroke. — Evan of Wales meets the Earl a Prisoner in Spain - - 168
- XXXIX.** The Constable du Guesclin takes the Castle of Monmorillon, and other Places in Poitou - 171
- XL.** The Constable of France takes Moncontour by a Capitulation. He marches from thence to form a Junction with the Duke of Berry in the Limousin, when they lay Siege to St. Severe - 174
- XLI.** The Garrison of St. Severe, after a sharp Assault, surrenders to Sir Bertrand du Guesclin. — The City of Poitiers turns to the French Party - - 180
- XLII.** The French make the Captal de Buch Prisoner. — La Rochelle turns to the French - - 185
- XLIII.** Sir Bertrand Du Guesclin takes several Castles in the Rochellois. — The King of England embarks to come to the Assistance of Thouars, but is prevented by contrary Winds: Upon which those of Thouars, and many others in Poitou, surrender to the French - 196

CHAP.

- CHAP. XLIV. The Duke of Brittany dares not  
openly declare for the King of  
England.—Sir Bertrand Du Gues-  
clin lays Siege to Civray.—The  
English are defeated, and the  
whole of the Countries of Poitou,  
Saintonge, and La Rochelle, are  
given up to the French - 207
- XLV. The Siege of Becherel.—Peace  
between the Kings of France and  
Navarre.—The Death of the  
King of Scotland. - - 217
- XLVI. The Earl of Salisbury, Sir William  
Neville, Sir Philip Courtenay,  
with many other Men at Arms,  
land in Brittany.—The Constable  
of France marches thither; on  
which the Duke of Brittany goes  
to England - - - 219
- XLVII. The French besiege four different  
Places.—La Roche Sur Yon sur-  
renders to the French.—The Siege  
of Brest is raised by a Capitula-  
tion, which is not kept - - 226
- XLVIII. The Duke of Lancaster lands at  
Calais, and invades Picardy.—A  
Part of his Army defeated by the  
Lord De Boursiers before Ribe-  
mont.—Another Part of his Army  
is defeated near Soissons by an  
Ambuscade of Burgundians and  
French - - - 235.
- XLIX. The Hostages sent from Derval are  
beheaded.—Sir Robert Knolles re-  
taliates on those Prisoners whom he  
had taken.—The Duke of Lancas-  
ter finishes his Expedition - 245

CHAP. L. The Duke of Anjou's Campaign into Upper Gascony	- - - 249
LII. The Earl of Pembroke and his Companions are ransomed.—A short Truce between the French and English.—Becherel surrenders on Terms.—The Death of the Earl of Pembroke	- 253
LIII. Several Towns in Gascony surrender to the King of France.—Sir Hugh de Chastillon returns from Prison.—The Castle of Becherel surrenders to the French	- - - 256
LIII. A Truce agreed on at Bruges between the Kings of France and England.—The Duke of Brittany retires to his own Country, and regains some of his Towns and Castles	- - - 265
LIV. Some Breton Lords of the French Party are near being taken by the Duke of Brittany, but are delivered by the Truces at Bruges	- - - 269
LV. St. Sauveur Le Vicomte surrenders to the French.—The Lord de Coucy leads a large Army into Ausria, which he claims as his Inheritance	- - 272
LVI. The Truce between France and England is prolonged.—The Death of the Black Prince.—The Lord de Coucy returns, having had indifferent Success	276
LVII. Richard, Son to the Prince of Wales, is acknowledged as presumptive Heir to the Crown of England.—The Negotiations for Peace having failed, and the Truces expired, the War is renewed between the French and English	- - - 279

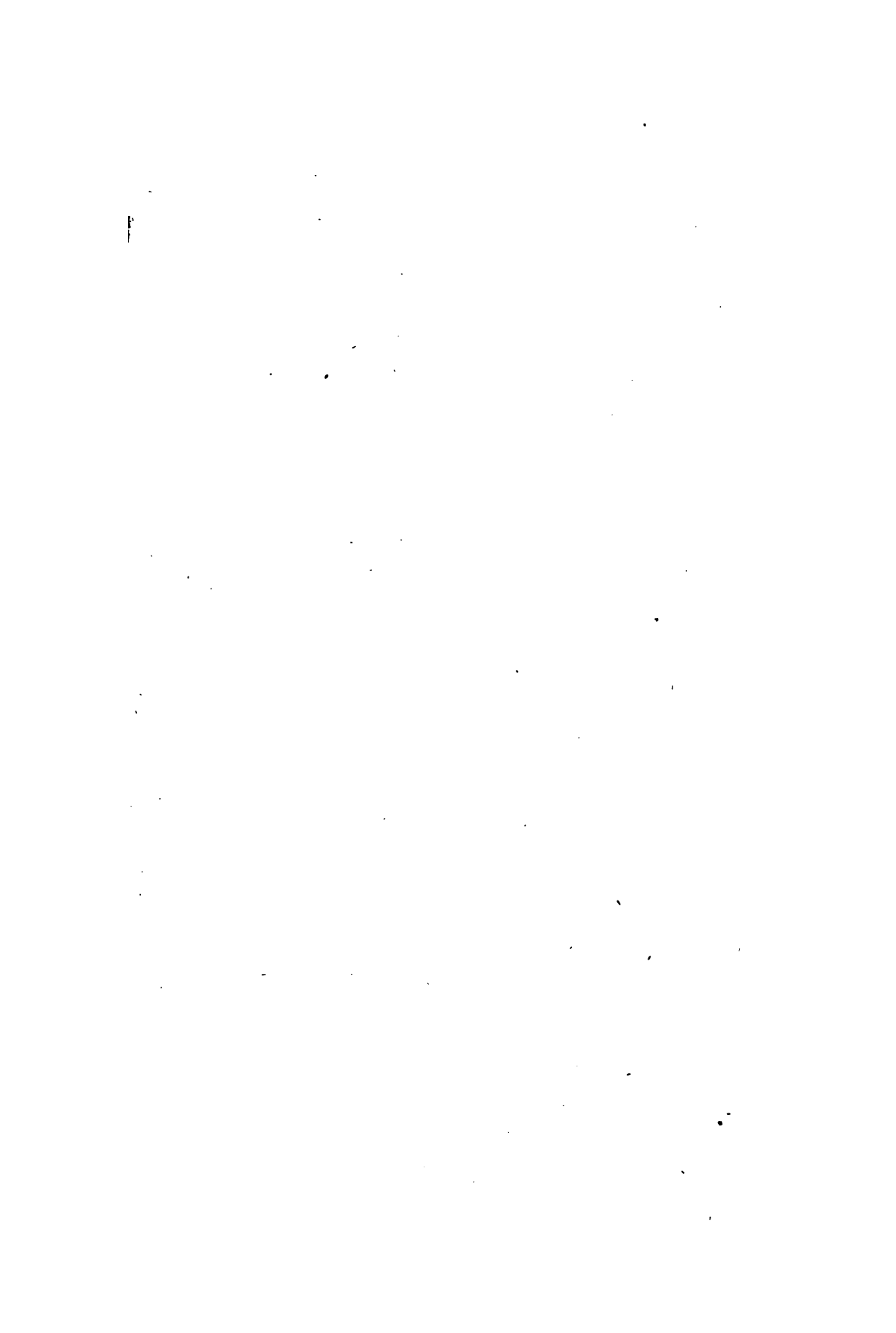
- CHAP. LVIII. Pope Gregory XI. leaves Avignon,  
and returns to Rome.—On the  
Death of Edward III. Richard,  
Son of the late Prince of Wales,  
is crowned King of England - 281
- LIX. The King of France equips for Sea  
a large Fleet, which burns several  
Towns in England - - 284
- LX. The Town of Ardres surrenders to  
the French.—The Death of the  
Captal de Buch and of the Queen  
of France - - - 287
- LXI. The War recommences between the  
King of France and the King of  
Navarre.—The Siege of Cher-  
bourg.—The Duke of Lancaster  
invades Brittany.—The Castle of  
Auray surrenders to the French - 290
- LXII. The French Garrison of Mont-  
bourg is defeated by the English  
at Cherbourg - - - 297
- LXIII. The Duke of Anjou undertakes an  
Expedition against the English in  
the Bourlelois - - - 302
- LXIV. Sir Thomas Felton is defeated and  
made Prisoner, with many of the  
principal Lord of Gascony, by a  
Party of French at the Siege of  
Bergerac - - - 309
- LXV. Bergerac surrenders to the Duke of  
Anjou.—The Lords de Duras and  
de Rosem, after having promised  
to be of the French Interest, re-  
turn again to the English - 315

CHAP.

- CHAP. LXVI.** Castillon, Sauveterre and several other Places in Gascony surrender to the Duke of Anjou - 321
- LXVII.** The Duke of Anjou takes the Town and Castle of St. Macaire by Capitulation.—The Town of Duras by Storm, but the Castle receives Quarter - - 324
- LXVIII.** The Duke of Anjou returns to the Duchess at Toulouse, and the Constable to the King of France.—Evan of Wales lays Siege to Mortain Sur Mer - 330
- LXIX.** King Charles of France instigates the Scots to make War on England.—The Scots take the Castle of Berwick - - 334
- LXX.** The Earl of Northumberland retakes the Castle of Berwick - 340
- LXXI.** The Earls of Northumberland and Nottingham enter Scotland with a large Army - - 345
- LXXII.** Sir Thomas Musgrave and the English under his Command are defeated by the Scots - - 350
- LXXIII.** The Deaths of the Queens of France and of Navarre, and the Renewal of the Feuds between their two Husbands - - 355
- LXXIV.** The Death of Pope Gregory XI.—After the sudden Death of his immediate Successor, the Cardinals are constrained to elect Urban VI. which causes a Schism in the Church of Rome - 357

- CHAP. LXXV.** The King of Navarre sends Ambassadors to France, in Hopes of regaining Possession of his Children.—Two of his People are convicted of having attempted to poison the King of France - 364
- LXXVI.** The King of France orders the Possessions of the King of Navarre to be seized, as well in Normandy as in Languedoc.—The King of Navarre forms an Alliance with the English.—The Terms of that Alliance - 363
- LXXVII.** The Lords de Coucy and de la Riviere take several Places in the County of Evreux, from the King of Navarre - - 374
- LXXVIII.** The Duke of Anjou retains large Bodies of Men at Arms against the English.—The Spaniards lay Siege to Bayonne - - 380





THE  
CHRONICLES  
OF  
*ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.*

---

CHAP I.

THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY MARCHES FROM THE CITY OF ROUEN, WITH THE INTENTION OF COMBATING THE DUKE OF LANCASTER AND THE ENGLISH.—THE TWO ARMIES ARE ENCAMPED OPPOSITE TO EACH OTHER AT TOURNEHEM\*.

**W**HEN the duke of Lancaster was arrived at Calais, as has been before mentioned, and had refreshed his army a little, he was not willing to remain there without performing some warlike deeds upon the French: he therefore marched out with his two marshals and full three hundred lances, with as many archers. They passed through Guines†, and continued their march until they had crossed the river Dostre, and overran that whole country. They turned towards the abbey

---

\* Tournehem,—a small town of Artois, bailiwick of St. Omer.

† Guines,—a town in Picardy, two leagues and a half from Calais.

of Liques \*, where they collected a large booty, which they brought safe with them to Calais.

On another day, he made an excursion towards Boulogne, where he did much damage to the flat countries.

The count Guy de St. Pol and sir Galeran his son were at the time in the city of Terouenne, with many men at arms ; but they made no sally against the English, when they were on these expeditions, for they did not think themselves sufficiently strong to oppose them in the field.

News was brought to the king of France, who at that time was holding his court at Rouen in the greatest pomp and magnificence, that the duke of Lancaster was come to Calais, and that from thence he was daily making inroads into France. When the king and his council heard this, their minds were occupied on a different subject ; for this same week the duke of Burgundy was to embark with his whole army, consisting of upwards of three thousand fighting men, to invade England.

The king demanded from his prelates and council what was best to be done, supposing the English had crossed the sea, whether to advance to them and offer battle, or to continue their plan of operation for the invasion of England. This last proposition was given up, and orders sent to the French army to break up their quarters in and near Rouen as soon as possible, and to prepare every thing for marching towards Calais with the duke

---

\* Abbey of Liques,—diocese of Boulogne sur mer.

of Burgundy. Such were the commands of the king of France, for he was desirous of combating the English on that side of the water.

The men at arms heard these orders with great joy, and were soon ready. The duke of Burgundy, with his whole army, took the field, and formed his march so as to cross the river Somme at Abbeville. He continued until he came to Montrieul \* sur mer, and from thence to Hesdin † and St. Paul ‡, where they halted for the rear of the army to join them.

News was brought to the duke of Lancaster, that the French were on their march to offer him battle ; upon which the duke, with his whole army, left Calais, and took up their quarters in the valley of Tournehem. He had not been long there before that gallant knight sir Robert de Namur came in grand array to serve under him, with a hundred lances of good men at arms, accompanied with knights and squires.

The duke of Lancaster was much rejoiced on his arrival, and said : ‘ My good uncle, you are heartily welcome ; for they say that the duke of Burgundy is on his march, and wishes to fight with us.’ Sir Robert replied, ‘ My lord, by God’s help, we will willingly meet him.’

\* Montrieul,—a town in Picardy, seventeen leagues and a half from Calais.

† Hesdin,—a strong town in Artois, eighteen leagues and a half from Calais.

‡ St. Paul,—a small town in Picardy, diocese of Beauvais.

The English found good quarters in the valley Tournchem, where they fortified themselves with strong hedges, and there came daily to them provision in abundance from Calais. Their light horse scoured the country of Guines, but they gained little; for all the low countries had been spoiled, and their most valuable things carried for safety to the adjoining fortresses.

The duke of Burgundy arrived with all his chivalry, and fixed his quarters at the hill of Tournchem, where his marshals immediately encamped the men at arms opposite to where the English lay.

The French lodged themselves orderly, and without delay: they took up much ground, and with good reason; for I have had it mentioned to me as a certain fact, that the duke of Burgundy had under his command four thousand good knights. You may judge therefore of the great difference between the two armies.

Each army remained in these positions a considerable time without doing any thing; for the duke of Burgundy, notwithstanding he was so much superior in force, and had with him, of good men at arms, seven to one, would not engage without the positive orders of the king of France, his brother, who was not desirous of it. In truth, had the French come forward to battle, the English would not have refused it; for they were daily drawn out, and in readiness to receive them. They had made every preparation, and each person knew what he was to do, should the enemy shew  
any

any inclination to fight : but because they were so small a body, and so well fortified, they would not foolishly lose an advantage by quitting their camp.

Some knights advanced from each army to skirmish ; and, as usual in such cases, sometimes one side gained, and sometimes the other.

The earl of Flanders, at this time, was very anxious for the honour and reputation of the duke of Burgundy, his son-in-law : he resided in a handsome house which he had lately built near to Ghent : he frequently heard from or sent to the duke, by messengers who were constantly employed on this service. The earl strongly advised his son-in-law, for his own honour, not to exceed, on any account, the orders which he had received from his brother the king of France, or from his council.

We will now return to the affairs of the distant provinces, where the knights had frequently more employment, and met with adventures in greater abundance than any where else, on account of the war being carried on more vigorously.

## CHAP II.

SIR JOHN CHANDOS DOES GREAT MISCHIEF TO THE PROVINCE OF ANJOU.—HE DESPOILS THE ESTATES OF THE VISCOUNT DE ROCHE-CHOUART, EXCEPT THE FORTRESSES AND STRONG HOLDS.

**D**URING the time of this expedition to Tournhem, and in that neighbourhood, some feats of arms were performed in Poitou, which ought not to be forgotten. Sir John Chandos, being sénéchal of Poitou, and a hardy and valiant knight, had a great desire to meet the French: he therefore did not remain long idle, but collected, during the time he passed at Poitiers a body of men at arms, English and Poitevins, and said he would make an incursion with them towards Anjou, and return by Touraine, to look at the French who were assembled in those parts. He sent information of the expedition he meditated to the earl of Pembroke, who was in garrison at Montagne \* sur mer, with two hundred lances.

The earl was much pleased with this intelligence, and would willingly have been of the party; but his attendants and some knights of his council prevented him, by saying; ‘My lord, you are a young and noble knight, formed to excel: if you

---

\* Montagne,—a town in Saintonge, on the Garonne.

at this moment unite yourself with sir John Chandos and his army, he will obtain all the glory of the expedition, and you will be only named as his companion. It is therefore more proper for you, who are of such high rank and birth, to act for yourself, and let sir John Chandos do so on his part, who is but a knight-bachelor when compared with you.'

These and such like words cooled the ardour of the earl of Pembroke, who, having no longer any wish to go, sent an excuse to sir John Chandos.

Sir John would not, however, give up his enterprise, but ordered his rendezvous at Poitiers; from whence he marched, with three hundred lances, knights and squires, and two hundred archers. In this number were, lord Thomas Percy, sir Stephen Cossington, sir Richard de Pontchardon, sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, sir Richard Taunton, lord Thomas Spencer, sir Nèle Loring, the earl of Angus\*, sir Thomas Banastre, sir John Trivet, sir William de Montendre, sir Maubains de Linieres, sir Geoffry d'Argenton, and several other knights and squires.

These men at arms and archers marched boldly forth and in good array, as if going upon some

---

\* David king of Scotland created sir John Stuart of Bonkill earl of Angus. He and his heirs held the estates, but the Umphravilles of England (the earl mentioned in the text) grasped at the title for many generations.—*Pinkerton's Hist. of Scotland*, vol. i. p. 7.



grand enterprife, and, having paffed through the province of Poitou, entered that of Anjou. When they were arrived in that country, they fixed their quarters in the flat parts of it, and ſent out their light diviſions to burn and deſtroy every thing. They did infinite miſchief to this rich and fine country, without any one attempting to prevent them; and they remained there upwards of fifteen days, eſpecially in that part of it called the Loudunois.

They retreated from Anjou down the river Creuſe, which ſeparates Touraine from Poitou; and ſir John Chandos, with his army, entered the lands of the viſcount de la Rochechouart, where every thing, excepting the fortrefſes, was ruined. They advanced to the town of Rochechouart, and vigorously aſſaulted it, but without effect; for there were excellent men at arms within it, commanded by Thibault du Pont and Helyons de Talay, who prevented it from being taken or injured.

The Engliſh continued their march to Chauvigny\*, where ſir John Chandos received information that the lord Louis de Sancerre, maſhal of France, with a great body of men at arms, were at la Haye † in Touraine. He was very deſirous to march that way, and ſent in great haſte to the earl of Pembroke to ſignify his intentions, and to beg of him to accompany him to la Haye in Tou-

---

\* Chauvigny,—a town in Poitou, on the Vienne, fix leagues from Poitiers.

† La Haye,—a town in Touraine, on the Creuſe.

rine, and that he would meet him at Châtelheraut \*. Chandos the herald was the bearer of this message. He found the earl of Pembroke at Mortagne busily employed in mustering his men, and preparing, as it appeared, to make an excursion. He excused himself a second time, by the advice of his council, saying he could not accompany him.

The herald, on his return, found his master and the army at Châtelheraut, to whom he delivered his answer. When sir John Chandos heard it, he was very melancholy, knowing that pride and presumption had made the earl refuse to be a party in this expedition, and only replied, ‘ God’s will be done.’ He dismissed the greater part of his army, who separated, and he, with his attendants, returned to Poitiers.

---

### CHAP. III.

THE LORD LOUIS DE SANCERRE SURPRISES  
THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.—SEVERAL OF HIS  
MEN ARE SLAIN, AND THE EARL IS BE-  
SIEGED IN A HOUSE AT PUIRENON.

WE will now relate how the earl of Pembroke prospered. As soon as he knew that sir John Chandos had disbanded his army, and was

---

\* Châtelheraut,—a town in Poitou, on the Vienne.

returned

returned to Poitiers, he assembled his own forces, which consisted of three hundred English and Poitevins, and marched from Mortagne. He was joined by some knights and squires of Poitou and Saintonge, as well as by some English knights that had been in sir John Chandos' army.

These men at arms, therefore, advanced under the command of the earl of Pembroke, and took the direct road to where sir John Chandos had been, burning and despoiling all those parts of Anjou which the first had left, or which had been ransomed. They halted to refresh themselves in the Loudunois, and then took the road for the lands of the viscount de Rochechouart, to which they did great damage.

The French who were in garrison on the frontiers of Touraine, Anjou and Poitou, consisting of a large body of men at arms, heard the whole truth of these two excursions, and how the earl of Pembroke, who was a young man, would not, through pride, serve under sir John Chandos. They therefore resolved to conquer him, if they could; for they thought they should more easily defeat him than sir John Chandos.

They made, in consequence, a secret levy of their forces from all the garrisons; and sir Louis de Sancerre, marshal of France, took the command of them. They marched all night to la Roche-posay \* in Poitou, which was in the French interest. There were in this expedition, sir

---

\* La Roche-posay,—a town in Touraine, on the Creuse.

Robert de Sancerre, cousin to the marshal, sir John de Vienne, sir John de Bueil, sir William des Bourdes, sir Louis de St. Julien and Carnet le Breton; in the whole, seven hundred fighting men.

The earl of Pembroke had finished his excursion, and re-entered Poitou, having completed the total destruction of the viscount de Rochechouart's estate. In his company were, sir Baldwin de Franville, sénéchal of Saintonge, lord Thomas Percy, lord Thomas Spencer, the earl of Angus, sir John Orwich \*, sir John Harpedon, sir James de Surgeres, sir John Cousins, sir Thomas de St. Alban, sir Robert Twiford, sir Simon Aufagre, sir John de Mortain, sir John Touchet, and several others.

The English and Poitevins marched on without any thought or precaution, having heard nothing of these men at arms: they had entered Poitou with all their pillage, and came, one day about noon, to a village called Puirenon, where they halted, after the manner of persons in perfect security. But when the servants were about to put the horses in the stable, and to prepare the supper, the French, who well knew what they were about, entered the village of Puirenon, with their lances in their rests, bawling out their cry, 'Our Lady, for Sancerre the marshal!' and then overthrew all they met in the streets. The noise became so

---

\* Sir John Orwich. Q: Barnes calls him sir Nêle Loring. Why not Norwich?

violent

violent, that the English ran to the head-quarters with great alarm, to inform the earl of Pembroke, lord Thomas Percy, sir Baldwin de Franville and the others, that the French had suddenly attacked and surprised them. These lords were soon armed, and, rallying out from their hotels, collected their men together; but they could not all assemble, for the numbers of the French were so considerable that the English and Poitevins were overpowered; and, in this first attack, more than one hundred and twenty were killed or made prisoners. The earl of Pembroke and some knights had no other remedy but to retire, as quickly as they could, into an unembattled house, which belonged to the knights-templars, without a moat, and only enclosed with a stone-wall. All who could get there time enough shut themselves in: the greater part of the others were slain or made prisoners, and their arms and horses taken. The earl of Pembroke lost all his plate.

The French, who closely pursued them, finding those who could get together had shut themselves up in this house, where much rejoiced, saying among themselves; 'They must be our prisoners, for they cannot escape; and we will make them dearly repay the damages they have done in Anjou and Touraine.' On which, they advanced to this house in regular order, and with a good will to assault it: when they were come thither, it was evening: after they had examined it narrowly on all sides, to see if it might be easily taken, they began the attack, in which were performed many  
gallant

gallant deeds of arms, for the French were in great numbers, and were all well tried men.

They made different attempts on this house, which was very strong, and gave the earl Pembroke and his men enough to do ; for the English, being so few, laboured hard to defend themselves, as it was to them of the greatest consequence. Scaling ladders were brought, and fixed against the walls, which some bold adventurers mounted, with their shields over their heads to shelter themselves from stones and arrows ; but when they were got to the top they had done nothing, for they found there, ready to receive them, knights, squires, men at arms, with lances and swords, with which they handsomely fought hand to hand, and made them descend much quicker than they had mounted. Add to this, that there were English archers intermixed with these men at arms, at two feet distance on the walls, who shot so well that the French beneath suffered much.

The English continued under constant alarm, repelling these attacks until night, when the French tired with fighting and fatigue, sounded their trumpets for the retreat, saying they had done enough for one day, but that they would return to be attack on the morrow ; adding, that, as they could not escape from them, they would starve them to surrender. They returned to their quarters in high spirits, and made merry, having placed a strong ward in front of the house to be more secure of their enemies.

It

It will readily be believed that the earl of Pembroke and those who were thus blockaded were not much at their ease: they were aware that this house was not of sufficient strength to hold out long against so many men at arms. It was as badly provided with artillery, to their great sorrow, as with provision; but this last was not much consequence, for they could well fast a day and night, if necessary, in defending themselves.

When it was dark, they entreated a squire, expert soldier, and in whom they placed great confidence, to set out directly by a postern, and ride as fast as he could to Poitiers, to inform John Chandos and his friends how awkwardly they were situated, and to beg they would come to their assistance; in the hopes of which they would hold out until noon; and, if he made haste, he might easily make this journey by early morning.

The squire, who perceived the extreme danger in which all the lords were, very cheerfully undertook it, but boasted a little too much of his knowledge of the roads. He set out about midnight by a postern-gate, and took the straight road, he thought for Poitiers; but it so fell out, that during the whole night he wandered about, until it was broad day, before he hit upon the right road.

At day-break, the French, who were besieging the English at Puirennon as you have before heard, sounded their trumpets to arm, saying it would be better to make their attacks in the cool of the morning than in the heat of the day.

The earl of Pembroke and the knights shut up with him, instead of sleeping, had fortified themselves with whatever they could find, making use even of benches and stones, which they had carried to the top of the walls. They found the French were preparing to renew the attack, and comforted each other upon it.

Some time before sun-rise, the French were ready, when they marched by companies, and with great vigour, to the assault of the hôtel. They acquitted themselves too well, and having brought scaling ladders, placed them against the walls, mounting them with the utmost eagerness, covered by their shields, otherwise they would not have ventured: it was held highly honourable to those who mounted the first, as in truth it was a very brave act.

The English were not idle nor faint-hearted in their own defence, but fought marvellously well, and flung down upon the shields of the assailants stones and great beams of wood, with which they beat them so severely, that they killed or wounded several. They did their duty excellently well, and so small a fort was never seen to hold out so long against such a force. This assault continued from early dawn until six o'clock.



## CHAP. IV.

SIR JOHN CHANDOS COMES TO THE ASSISTANCE  
OF THE EARL OF PEMBROKE, BESIEGED IN  
PUIRENON.

**B**ETWEEN six and nine o'clock, after the heat of the attack, the French, indignant that the English had made so long a defence, sent orders to all the villagers thereabouts to bring pick-axes and mattocks to undermine the walls, which was what the English were most afraid of. The earl of Pembroke called one of his own squires, and said to him; 'My friend, mount a horse, and sally out from the back gate, where they will make way for you, and ride as fast as possible to Poitiers to sir John Chandos, to tell him our situation and the imminent danger we are in: recommend me to him by this token.' He then took off his finger a rich ring of gold, adding, 'Give him this from me: he will know it well again.' The squire, who thought himself much honoured by this commission, took the ring, mounted the best courser he could find, and set off by the back gate during the attack, for they opened it for him. He took the road to Poitiers; and, whilst he was making all the haste he could, the assault was carried on warmly by the French, and as vigorously opposed by the English: indeed, it behoved them so to do.

We

We will now say something of the first squire, who had left Puirenon at midnight, and who, having lost his road, had wandered about all the night. When it was broad day, he knew his road, and made straight for Poitiers; but, his horse being tired, he did not arrive there until about nine o'clock, when he dismounted in the square before the hôtel of sir John Chandos, and immediately entered it, having learnt that he was at mafs: he approached him, and, falling on his knees, delivered his message.

Sir John Chandos, who had not yet recovered his vexation at the earl of Pembroke's refusal to join him in his expeditions, was not very eager to give him assistance: he coldly said, 'It will be almost impossible for us to get there in time and hear the whole mafs.' Soon after mafs, the tables were spread, and dinner set out. His servants asked sir John, if he would dine: 'Yes,' said he, 'since it is ready,' and then entered the hall, where his knights and squires had preceded him with water to wash his hands. As he was thus employed, and before he sat down to table, the second squire from the earl of Pembroke entered the hall, and, having knelt down, drew the ring from his purse, saying; 'Dear sir, my lord the earl of Pembroke recommends himself to you by this token, and entreats you most earnestly to come to his assistance, and rescue him from the imminent danger he is now in at Puirenon.'

Sir John Chandos took the ring, and, having examined it, knew it well. He then replied, 'It

will not be possible for us to arrive there in time, if they be in the situation you describe.' He added, 'Come, let us dine.' Sir John seated himself with his knights at table, and eat of the first course: as the second was served, and indeed begun on, sir John Chandos, who had much thought on this business, raised his head, and, looking at his companions, spoke as follows, which gave much pleasure to those around him.

'The earl of Pembroke (a lord of such high birth and rank that he has even married a daughter of my natural lord the king of England, and is brother in arms as in every thing else with my lord of Cambridge,) entreats me so courteously that it behoves me to comply with his request to succour and rescue him, if it be possible to arrive in time.' He then pushed the table from him, and, rising, said to his knights and squires, 'Gentlemen, I am determined to go to Puirennon.' This was heard with joy, and they were soon ready to attend him. The trumpets sounded, and every man at arms in Poitiers was mounted in the best way he could; for it had been speedily told abroad, that sir John Chandos was marching to Puirennon, to the assistance of the earl of Pembroke and his army, who were there besieged by the French.

When these knights and squires took the field, they amounted to upwards of two hundred lances, and increased every moment. They marched with all haste: news of this was brought to the French, who had constantly been engaged at this assault from day-break until noon, by their spies, who said; 'Dear lords,

lords, look well to yourselves ; for sir John Chandos has marched from Poitiers with upwards of two hundred lances, and is advancing with great haste and a greater desire to meet with you.'

When sir Louis de Sancerre, sir John de Vienne, sir John de Beuil and the others who were present, heard this, the best informed among them said ; ' Our men are tired and worn down by their assaults upon the English, yesterday and to-day : it will be much wiser for us to make a handsome retreat with all we have gained, and our prisoners, than to wait the arrival of sir John Chandos and his company, who are quite fresh ; for we may lose more than we can gain.'

This plan was immediately followed, for there was not a moment to lose : the trumpets were ordered to sound a retreat : their men assembled in a body, and, having sent off their baggage, they themselves took the road to la Roche-posay.

The earl of Pembroke and those with him, imagining the French must have had some intelligence, said among themselves ; ' Chandos must certainly be on his march, for the French are retreating, not daring to wait his coming : come, come, let us immediately quit this place and take the road towards Poitiers and we shall meet him.' Those who had horses mounted them : and others went on foot, and several rode double. They thus left Puirenon, following the road to Poitiers : they had scarcely advanced a league before they met sir John Chandos and his army in the condition I have before told ; some on horseback, some on

foot, and some riding double. Much joy was shewn on both sides at this meeting; but sir John said, he was sorely vexed that he had not been in time to have met the French. They rode together conversing for about three leagues, when they took leave of each other and separated. Sir John Chandos returned to Poitiers; the earl of Pembroke to Mortagne, the place he had marched from; and the marshal of France and his army to la Roche-posay, where they refreshed themselves and divided their booty: they then retired to their garrisons, carrying with them their prisoners, whom they courteously admitted to ransom, as the French and English have always been accustomed to act towards each other.

We will now return to the armies in Tournehem; and speak of the death of the most courteous, noble and liberal queen that ever reigned in her time, the lady Philippa of Hainault, queen of England and of Ireland.

---

## CHAP. V.

THE DEATH OF QUEEN PHILIPPA OF ENGLAND  
SHE MAKES THREE REQUESTS TO THE KING ON  
HER DEATH-BED.—SOME FRENCHMEN, HAV-  
ING ATTACKED THE ENGLISH CAMP AT TOUR-  
NEHEM, ARE REPULSED BY SIR ROBERT D.  
NAMUR.

**D**URING the time that such numbers of noble men of the kingdom of France were assembled at Tournehem under the command of the duk

duke of Burgundy, and the duke of Lancaster was encamped with his army in the valley opposite to them, a circumstance happened in England, which, though so very common, was not the less unfortunate for the king, his children, and the whole kingdom. That excellent lady the queen of England (who had done so much good, and during her whole life had assisted all knights, ladies and damsels who had applied to her, who had had such boundless charity for all mankind, and who had naturally such an affection for the Hainault nation, being the country from which she sprung,) lay at this time dangerously ill at Windsor-castle, and her disorder daily increased.

When the good lady perceived her end approaching, she called to the king, and, extending her right hand from under the bed-clothes, put it into the right hand of the king, who was very sorrowful at heart, and thus spoke; ‘ We have enjoyed our union in happiness, peace, and prosperity : I entreat, therefore of you, that on our separation, you will grant me three requests.’ The king, with sighs and tears, replied ; ‘ Lady, ask : whatever you request shall be granted.’ ‘ My lord, I beg you will acquit me of whatever engagements I may have entered into formerly with merchants for their wares, as well on this as on the other side of the sea. I beseech you also to fulfil whatever gifts or legacies I may have made, or left to churches, here or on the continent, wherein I have paid my devotions, as well as what I may have left to those of both sexes who have

been in my service. Thirdly, I entreat that, when it shall please God to call you hence, you will not choose any other sepulchre than mine, and that you will lie by my side in the cloisters of Westminster.' The king, in tears, replied, ' Lady, I grant them.'

Soon after, the good lady made the sign of the cross on her breast, and, having recommended to God the king and her youngest son, Thomas, who was present, gave up her spirit, which, I firmly believe, was caught by the holy angels and carried to the glory of Heaven; for she had never done any thing, by thought or deed, that could endanger her losing it. Thus died this queen of England, in the year of grace 1369, the vigil of the assumption of the Virgin, the 15th of August\*.

Information of this loss was carried to the English army at Tournhem, which greatly afflicted every one, but particularly her son the duke of Lancaster. However, as there is no death but what must be passed over and forgotten, the English did not neglect to keep up very strict discipline in their camp, where they remained a long time facing the French.

It happened that some of the French knights and squires, seeing the enemy every day before their eyes, held a conversation, and, after discussing the matter, agreed to meet on the morrow, at day-break, to skirmish with them, and beat up the guard.

---

\* See her monument in Gough's Sepulchral Monuments, vol. i.

There were upwards of three hundred knights and squires, the greater part of them from the Vermandois, Artois, and Corbiois, who had entered into this agreement, and, without mentioning it to their marshals, had each informed the other of their intentions. When the morning came for this expedition, they were all ready armed, mounted, and assembled. They rode forth in this array, nothing doubting of success, and began to make a circuit round the hill of Tournhem, in order to gain an advantageous position, and to fall upon one of the wings of the English army.

This wing was allotted to sir Robert de Namur and his people. Sir Robert had been on guard that night, but towards day-break had entered his tent, and was then sitting at supper, quite armed, except his helmet, and the lord Despontin\* with him. The French at this moment arrived at the quarters of sir Robert, which were also those of some other German and English lords; but the guard very fortunately had not disarmed themselves: they immediately opposed the Frenchmen who came up spurring and galloping, and checked their career. News soon reached sir Robert that his men were fighting, having been attacked by the French. In an instant, he pushed the table from him where he had been seated, and said to the lord Despontin, 'Come, come to the assistance of our men.' Instantly he fixed his helmet

---

\* Lord Despontin. Q. Barnes calls him lord of Ponthieu.



on his head, and ordered his banner, which was placed before his tent, to be display'd. Some one said, 'My lord, send to the duke of Lancaster, and do not engage without him.' He bluntly replied : ' Not I : I shall go the shortest way I can to help my men. Those may send to my lord of Lancaster who will ; but let all who love me follow me.'

He then advanced, sword in hand, to meet the enemy : the lord Despontin and sir Henry de Sancelle were with him, as well as his other knights, who directly engaged in the battle, having found their men fighting with the French, in great numbers, and who, to speak truth, ought to have done much this day : but no sooner did they perceive sir Robert de Namur marching with his banner than they wheeled about and gave up their plan, for they thought the whole army was ready to fall on them : indeed, it was so in different parts of the camp, for the sun was now risen.

A Vermandois knight was slain under the banner of sir Robert de Namur, called sir Robert de Coulogne, who was much regretted ; for he was rich, amiable, and courteous, and an honourable knight in every station.

Thus ended the affair. The French retreated without doing any thing more, for they were afraid of greater loss than gain. Sir Robert did not pursue them farther than was wise, but brought back his men when he found the enemy was quite gone, and returned to his quarters,

CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY AND HIS ARMY DE-CAMP WITHOUT A BATTLE.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER RETURNS TO CALAIS.

**SINCE** this last affair, nothing happened worth relating. It was very displeasing to many on both sides that they thus remained so long without a battle: every day it was said, ‘ We shall engage to-morrow;’ but that morrow never came; for, as I have said before, the duke of Burgundy would not act contrary to the orders of the king: The orders he received were very strict; for there were continually messengers going from the king to the duke, and from the duke to the king on this subject.

At last the duke of Burgundy, as I was then informed, having considered that he was encamped at a very heavy expense, and could not remain so much longer with any honour; for he had upwards of four thousand knights, while the enemy was but a handful in comparison, with whom, however, he had not fought, nor had had any intentions of so doing: the duke, I say, sent some of his knights to lay his situation before the king, and to explain to him his wishes. The king thought the duke judged rightly, and ordered him, on the receipt of his letters, to break up his camp,

to

to dismiss his army, and come to Paris, where he himself was going.

When the duke received these orders, he sent for the principal lords of his army, and told them secretly their contents ; saying, ‘ We must break up our camp, for the king sends for us back.’ When it was midnight, those to whom he had given this information, having packed up every thing, were mounted, and had set fire to their quarters. At this hour, sir Henry de Sancelle was returning to his tent, having been on guard with sir Robert de Namur’s men, to whom he was attached ; and seeing first one, then two, and then three fires in the enemy’s camp, he said to himself, ‘ These French think, perhaps, to surprise us : they have the appearance of intending it. Let us go,’ said he to those near him, ‘ to sir Robert’s tent, and awaken him, that, should it be so, he may be prepared in time.’ Sir Henry went thither, and, calling his chamberlains, told them, they must instantly awaken sir Robert. They went to his bed-side and sir Henry de Sancelle with them, who awakened him, and told him all that he had seen. Sir Robert made answer, ‘ We shall soon hear other news : let our men be instantly armed and made ready.’ He himself was soon armed. When his men were drawn up, he had his banner displayed, and marched to the tent of the duke of Lancaster, who was arming also, for he had received similar information. It was not long before the different lords came thither, one after another : as they arrived,

rived, they were drawn up, and remained quiet, without any light.

The duke of Lancafter ordered his marshals to march the archers to where he hoped the French would make their attack, if they came; for he certainly expected a battle. When they had remained at their posts for two hours, and saw no one advancing to them, they were more surprised than before. The duke called to him his lords, and asked them what he had best now to do. Some replied one thing, and some another, and each defended his own opinion. The duke, perceiving that valiant knight sir Walter Manny, said; 'And you, sir Walter, what do you advise?' 'I do not know,' replied sir Walter; 'but, if you will follow my advice, I would draw up my men at arms and archers in order of battle, and would advance slowly; for, as it will soon be day, we shall then see clearly before us.'

The duke assented to this proposal: but others were of a contrary opinion, and advised him not to march from where he was.

This discussion continued until orders were given for some of the troops of sir Robert de Namur and sir Waleran de Bourne\* to mount their horses, because they were lightly accoutred and rode well. Thirty horsemen were chosen from the best mounted, and sent off towards the French camp.

---

\* Sir Waleran de Bourne. Q. Barnes calls him Van Borne.

Whilst they were gone on this expedition, sir Walter Manny, addressing the duke, said; ' My lord, never believe me again, if these French be not fled : mount your horse, and order the others to do the same, that you may pursue them, and I will engage you will have a fine day of it.'

The duke replied; ' Sir Walter, I have hitherto always followed the advice of my council, and intend now doing so; for I can never believe that so many brave men at arms and noble knights would thus run away. Perhaps the fires we see may have been lighted to entrap us. Our scouts will soon return, and then we shall know the truth.'

As they were thus conversing, the scouts returned, and confirmed all that sir Walter Manny had thought: they said they had found none but some poor victuallers, who followed the army. Sir Walter Manny gained great credit. The duke went to his tent to disarm: he would that day have dined in the French camp, but the fire was too great: he and his men at arms, however, stopped there, and took up their quarters on the mountain for the night, and made themselves comfortable with what they found there. On the morrow they decamped, and returned to Calais.

The duke of Burgundy, when he marched off, made his quarters at St. Omer, where he and all his army remained until they were disbanded, and every man returned to his home. There was afterwards much trouble to re-assemble them again.

## CHAP. VII.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE, DESIROUS OF AVENGING HIMSELF FOR THE DEFEAT HE RECEIVED AT PUIRENON, MAKES AN INCURSION TO ANJOU.—THE ABBEY OF ST. SALVIN IN POITOU IS BETRAYED TO THE FRENCH, AND FORTIFIED.

THE same week that the armies quitted Tournehem, the earl of Pembroke (who was in Poitou, and had been much mortified at the defeat he had suffered from sir Louis de Sancerre, sir John de Vienne, sir John de Bueil and the others at Puirenou, as has been related) resolved to have his revenge, if possible; and for this end he marched from Mortagne with his army, which consisted of about two hundred lances, and came to Angoulême, where the prince received him most courteously. The earl entreated of him permission to lead another expedition, and to lend him some of his men, as he was very anxious to avenge himself of the affronts he had suffered from the French. The prince, who had much affection for him, immediately granted his request. Sir Hugh Calverly was just returned from his excursion into the county of Armagnac, with five hundred fighting men; and the prince gave him leave to accompany the earl of Pembroke in his intended expedition.

He

He also requested the company of sir Louis de Harcourt, sir Guiscard d'Angle, sir Percival de Coulongne, the lords de Pons, de Partenay and de Pinane, lord Thomas Percy, sir Richard de Pontchardon, and several knights of the prince's household, who willingly accepted the invitation, for they were ready for any excursion: so that, when they were assembled, they amounted to five hundred lances, three hundred archers, and fifteen hundred foot soldiers, armed with pikes and shields, who followed the army on foot. This army marched, under the command of the earl of Pembroke as their leader, and took the road towards Anjou: where they no sooner arrived than they began to destroy, and to do every damage to the country they passed through, by razing castles and forts, burning such towns as could not hold out against them, and levying contributions on all the flat country as far as Saumur \* on the Loire. They gained possession of the suburbs, and began an assault on the town; but they could not take it, for sir Robert de Sancerre was in it with a large body of men at arms, who defended it from suffering any damage: all the country round about it, however, was pillaged, burnt, and ruined.

Sir Hugh Calverly and his division advanced to a bridge on the Loire, called le Pont de Cé†; when he defeated those who guarded it, took the bridge, and placed such a garrison of his own men

---

\* Saumur,—on the Loire, diocese of Angers.

† Pont de Cé,—Pont de Sé,—two leagues from Angers.

there,

there, after he had fortified it well, that they kept possession of it for a long time.

The English, in this expedition, took a large abbey called St. Maur \*, on the Loire, which they repaired and fortified, and placed therein a considerable garrison, which, during the ensuing winter and summer, did great mischief to the adjacent country.

At this time, there was in Poitou an abbey which still exists, called St. Salvin †, situated seven leagues from Poitiers; and in this abbey there was a monk who hated the abbot, as he afterwards shewed. It was on account of this hatred which he bore him that he betrayed the abbot and the whole convent, and delivered up the abbey and the town to sir Louis de St. Julien and to Carnet le Breton, who took possession of it, repaired it, and made it a strong garrison.

Sir John Chandos was much vexed at St. Salvin being thus surprised, and not being able to retake it; for, as he was sénéchal of Poitou, he was angry that such a house should have been taken in his government, and declared, that if he should live long enough, he would have it again by some means or other, and make them pay dearly for the insult they had put upon him.

We will now quit Poitou, and return to the duke of Lancaster.

---

\* St. Maur,—on the Loire, election of Saumur.

† St. Salvin,—St. Savin,—a village in Poitou, election of Poitiers.



## CHAP. VIII.

THE COUNTY OF ST. POL IN PICARDY IS PIL-  
LAGED AND RUINED BY THE ENGLISH.—  
SIR HUGH DE CHASTILLON IS TAKEN PRI-  
SONER.

**W**HEN the duke of Lancaster had retreated to Calais after the decampment of Tournhem, as has been before related, and had refreshed himself and men for three days, he resolved, by advice of his council, to draw out his troops, and make an excursion into France. His marshals, the earl of Warwick and sir Roger Beauchamp, were ordered to muster the army, which orders they very readily obeyed, for they were desirous of making an inroad on France.

The men at arms and archers marched from Calais in excellent array: every man was apprised what he was to do, and where he was going. The first day's march was only five leagues from Calais. On the morrow, they came before St. Omer, where there were many skirmishes at the gates; but the English did not make any long halt: they continued their march, and that night encamped on the heights of Herfault\*. On the third day,

---

\* Herfault. Q. if not Heriffart; but that seems to be too great a distance.

they

they arrived at the city of Terouenne\*, where was the count de St. Pol with a large company of men at arms. The English did not halt, but continued their march, taking the road to Hefdin†, and fixed their quarters at night on a small river.

When the count de St. Pol found that the English were taking the road to his country, he knew they were not going thither for his good, for they hated him too much: he set out, therefore, in the night, and gave the government of the city to the lord de St. Py and sir John de Roye‡; and, riding hard, he arrived at his town of St. Pol§.

The English came before the place very early on the morrow morning, and several severe skirmishes happened; but the arrival of the count was fortunate for himself and for the town, as he, with the assistance of those who had accompanied him, prevented the place from being taken. The duke of Lancaster, therefore, and his army refreshed themselves at their ease in the county of St. Pol, which they overran, and did great damage to all the flat

\* Terouenne—is now in ruins. It was taken by Henry VIII. by a stratagem of pointing wooden guns painted, which were thought to be real ones, and threatening to batter down the town, if not surrendered.

† Hefdin,—a strong town in Artois, on the Canche.

‡ Two of my MSS. have different names—the lord de Sampy, sir Guy de Roye. One has sir John de Roye.

§ St. Pol,—a town in Artois, five leagues from Hefdin.

country. They advanced to the castle of Pernes \*, where the countess dowager resided. They examined well the fort, and the duke sounded the depth of the ditches with a lance: notwithstanding this, they made no attack, though they showed every appearance of it. They made no long stay, but continued their march, and went towards Luchaux †, a handsome town, which belonged to the count. They burnt the town, and, without touching the castle, continued their road for St. Riquier ‡.

The English did not march more than three or four leagues a-day, so that they burnt and destroyed all the countries they passed through. They crossed the river Somme at Blanchetaque below Abbeville, and then entered the country of Vimeu §, with the intention of pushing forward to Harfleur on the Seine, in order to burn the navy of the king of France.

The count de St. Pol, and sir Moreau de Fienes, constable of France, with a large body of men at arms, pursued and hovered about the English army, so that they could not disperse nor quit the straight road, but were obliged to keep in a compact body, to be ready to combat the French should they be so inclined.

---

\* Castle of Pernes,—a town in Artois, three leagues from St. Pol.

† Luchaux,—a town of Picardy, near Doulens.

‡ St. Riquier,—an ancient town in Picardy, two leagues and a half from Abbeville.

§ Vimeu,—in Picardy. St. Valery is its capital.

In this manner they marched through Virneux and the county of Eu: entering the archbishoprick of Rouén, they passed Dieppe, and then continued their march until they came before Harfleur, where they fixed their quarters.

The count de St. Pol had out-marched them, and had entered the town with two hundred lances at the utmost. The English remained three days before Harfleur, but did nothing: on the fourth, they decamped, and returned through the lands of the lord d'Estouteville, whom they did not love much, and burnt and destroyed the whole or greater part. They then passed through Vexin Normand in their way to Oisemont\*, to recross the Somme at Blanchetaque.

Sir Hugh de Chastillon, master of the crossbows in France, was at this time captain and governor of Abbeville. When he heard that the duke of Lancaster was returning that way, he armed himself, and ordered twelve of his people to do the same. On mounting their horses, he said he was going to view the guard of the gate of Rouvray, that it might not be wanting in defence, and that the English should not find it too weakly guarded. It was early in the morning, and there was a thick fog.

Sir Nicholas Louvaine, who had been sénéchal of Ponthieu, and whom, this very year, sir Hugh de Chastillon had taken and ransomed for ten thou-

---

\* Oisemont,—a market-town in Picardy, five leagues from Abbeville.

land francs, remembered this so forely that, having a great desire to recover his losses, he set out on the point of day from the duke's army, accompanied by only twenty men. As he was well acquainted with all the roads and passes of that country, having resided there for upwards of three years; he intended lying in ambuscade between Abbeville and the castle of Rouvray, in the hope of taking some prize: he had crossed a small rivulet which ran through a marsh, and hid himself and men in some old uninhabited houses.

Sir Hugh never dreamed that the English would form an ambuscade so near the town. Sir Nicolas and his men kept themselves very quiet: they perceived sir Hugh de Chastillon riding down the road which leads to Rouvray, with only twelve others, armed at all points, except his helmet, which one of his pages bore on a courser behind him. He crossed the little rivulet, and made for the gate of Rouvray, to see what the guard of cross-bowmen were about, and to enquire if they had heard or seen the English.

When sir Nicholas Louvaine, who was on the watch, saw him, he recognised him directly, and was more rejoiced than if any one had given him twenty thousand francs. He sallied out from his ambush, saying; 'Follow me: here is what I wished for: it is the master of the cross-bows, and I ask for nothing better.' Then sticking spurs into his horse, and pointing his lance, he came upon sir Hugh, crying, 'Surrender, Chastillon, or thou art a dead man.' Sir Hugh, who was  
much,

much puzzled to conjecture whence these men could come, had neither time to put on his helmet nor to mount his courser: finding himself in such a strait, he asked, 'To whom am I to surrender?' Sir Nicholas replied, 'To Louvaine, to Louvaine.' In order, therefore, to avoid the danger he could not escape from, he said, 'I surrender.' He was then taken, and told, 'Ride on quickly, for the army of the duke of Lancaster marches on before us.' On this occasion was slain, a very valiant citizen of Abbeville, called Lawrence Dancons\*, who was much regretted.

Thus was taken and entrapped sir Hugh de Chastillon, at that time master of the cross-bows in France and governor of Abbeville, through the good fortune of sir Nicholas Louvaine: with which capture the duke of Lancaster and the English were much rejoiced. On the other hand, the inhabitants of Abbeville were exceedingly vexed at it; but for the present they could not better themselves.

The English marched on, crossed the Somme at Blanchetaque, and then passed through the towns of Rue sur mer and Montrieul sur mer, until they at last arrived at Calais. The duke of Lancaster there dismissed all the foreigners, when sir Waleran de Bourne and the Germans departed. The duke returned to England, and the Germans to their own country, as there was not any intention of continuing the war until the ensuing summer, for now

---

\* Dancons. My two MSS. have Dentels.

Martinmas was passed: but the duke informed them, that in the approaching spring, he should cross the sea with a greater force than he had hitherto done, and should entreat his cousins the dukes of Gueldres and Juliers to accompany him into France.

We shall now be silent as to the affairs of Picardy, for indeed nothing of great moment happened since this time, and return to Poitou, where warlike deeds were oftener performed.

---

## CHAP. IX.

SIR JOHN CHANDOS IS SLAIN IN A SKIRMISH.—  
THE FRENCH, AT FIRST VICTORIOUS, ARE IN  
THE END DEFEATED.

**S**IR John Chandos, being sénéchal of Poitou, was seriously afflicted with the loss of St. Salvin: he was continually devising means to retake it, whether by assault or by scalado was perfectly indifferent to him, so that he could gain it. He made many nightly ambuscades, but none succeeded; for sir Louis, who commanded in it, was very watchful, as he knew the capture of it had highly angered sir John Chandos.

It happened that, on the night preceding the eve of the new year (1370), sir John Chandos, who resided

resided in the city of Poitiers, had sent out his summons to the barons and knights of Poitou to come to him as secretly as they could, for he was going on an expedition. The Poitevins would not refuse him any thing, being much beloved by them : they obeyed his summons, and came to Poitiers. Sir Guiscard d'Angle, sir Louis de Harcourt, the lords de Pons, de Partenay, de Pinane, de Tannaybouton, sir Geoffry d'Argenton, sir Maubrun de Linieres, lord Thomas Percy, sir Baldwin de Franville, sir Richard de Pontchardon, came thither, with many others.

When they were all assembled, they were full three hundred lances.

They left Poitiers in the night, and no one, except the principal lords, knew whither they were going. The English, however, had scaling ladders, and every thing they might have occasion for with them. They marched to St. Salvin; and, when there arrived, were told what was intended; upon which they all dismounted, and, giving the horses to their valets, the English descended into the ditch. It was then about midnight.

They were in this situation, and would very shortly have succeeded in their expedition, when they heard the guard of the fort wind his horn. The reason was this. That very night Carnet le Breton had come from la Roche-posay, with forty lances, to St. Salvin, to request sir Louis de St. Julien to accompany him in an expedition to Poitou : he therefore awakened the guard and those within the fort.



The English, who were on the opposite side, ignorant of the intentions of this body of Frenchmen wanting to enter the fort, thought they had been seen by the guard, or that spies had given information of their arrival to the garrison. They immediately left the ditch, and said; 'Let us away; for this night we have been disappointed in our scheme.' They mounted their horses, and advanced in a body to Chauvigny on the river Creuse, two short leagues distant.

When all were arrived there, the Poitevins asked sir John Chandos if he wished them to remain with him: he answered, 'No: you may return in God's name: I will to-day stay in this town.' The Poitevins departed, and with them some English knights: in all, about two hundred lances.

Sir John Chandos entered a hôtel, and ordered a fire to be lighted. Lord Thomas Percy, sénéchal of la Rochelle, and his men remained with him. Lord Thomas asked sir John Chandos if he intended staying there that day: 'Yes,' replied sir John: 'why do you ask?' 'Because, sir, if you be determined not to go further, I shall beg of you to give me leave to make an excursion, to see if I shall meet with any adventure.' 'In the name of God, go then,' replied sir John. At these words, lord Thomas Percy set out, attended by about thirty lances. Sir John Chandos remained with his own people. Lord Thomas crossed the bridge of Chauvigny, taking the longest road to Poitiers, having left sir John Chandos

Chandos quite low spirited for having failed in his intended attack on St. Salvin. He continued in the kitchen of the hôtel, warming himself at a straw fire which his herald was making for him, conversing at the same time with his people, who very readily passed their jokes in hopes of curing him of his melancholy.

After he had remained some time, and was preparing to take a little rest, and while he was asking if it were yet day, a man entered the hôtel, and came before him, saying, ‘ My lord, I bring you news.’ ‘ What is it ?’ asked sir John. ‘ My lord, the French have taken the field.’ ‘ How dost thou know this ?’ ‘ My lord, I set out from St. Salvin with them.’ ‘ And what road have they taken ?’ ‘ My lord, that I cannot say for a certainty ; but it seemed to me they followed the road to Poitiers.’ ‘ And who are these French ?’ ‘ My lord, they are sir Louis de St. Julien and Carnet le Breton, with their companies.’ ‘ Well, it is indifferent to me,’ replied sir John : ‘ I have not any inclination to exert myself this day : they may be met with without my interference.’

He remained a considerable time very thoughtful : after having well considered, he added ; ‘ Notwithstanding what I have just said, I think I shall do right to mount my horse ; for at all events I must return to Poitiers, and it will be soon day.’ ‘ It is well judged,’ replied the knights who were with him. Sir John ordered every thing to be got ready, and his knights having done the same, they mounted and set off,  
taking

taking the road to Poitiers, following the course of the river. The French might be about a good league before them on this same road, intending to cross the river at the bridge of Lussac\*. The English suspected this from perceiving the tracks of the horses, and said among themselves, ' Either the French or lord Thomas Percy are just before us.' Shortly after this conversation, day appeared; for in the early part of January the mornings begin to be soon light. The French might be about a league from the bridge of Lussac, when they perceived lord Thomas Percy and his men on the other side of the river. Lord Thomas had before seen them, and had set off full gallop to gain the bridge. They said, ' There are the French: they are more in number than we are; let us hasten to take advantage of the bridge.'

When sir Lewis and Carnet saw the English on the opposite side of the river, they also made haste to gain the bridge: however, the English arrived first, and were masters of it. They all dismounted, and drew themselves up to defend and guard it.

The French likewise dismounted on their arrival, and, giving their horses for the servants to lead them to the rear, took their lances, and advanced in good order, to attack the English and win the bridge. The English stood firm, although they were so few in comparison with the enemy.

---

\* Lussac,—a town in Poitou, diocese of Poitiers.

Whilst the French and Bretons were considering the most advantageous manner to begin the onset, sir John Chandos arrives with his company, his banner displayed and flying in the wind. This was borne by a valiant man at arms, called James Allen, and was a pile gules on a field argent. They might be about forty lances, who eagerly hastened to meet the French. As the English arrived at a small hillock, about three furlongs from the bridge, the French servants, who were between this hillock and the bridge, saw them, and, being much frightened, said, 'Come away; let us save ourselves and our horses.' They therefore ran off, leaving their masters to shift as well as they could.

When sir John Chandos, with displayed banner, was come up to the French, whom he thought very lightly of, he began from horseback to rail at them, saying; 'Do you hear, Frenchmen: you are mischievous men at arms: you make incursions night and day at your pleasure: you take towns and castles in Poitou, of which I am sénéchal. You ransom poor people without my leave, as if the country were your own; but, by God, it is not. Sir Louis, sir Louis, you and Carnet are too much the masters. It is upwards of a year and a half that I have been endeavouring to meet you. Now, thanks to God, I do so, and will tell you my mind. We will now try which of us is the strongest in this country. It has been often told me, that you were very desirous of seeing me: you have now that pleasure. I am  
John

John Chandos : look at me well ; and, if God please, we will now put to the proof your great deeds of arms which are so renowned.'

With such words as these did sir John Chandos greet them : he would not have wished to have been any where else, so eager was he to fight with them.

Sir Louis and Carnet kept themselves in a close body, as if they were willing to engage. Lord Thomas Percy and the English on the other side of the bridge knew nothing of what had passed, for the bridge was very high in the middle, which prevented them from seeing over it.

During this scoffing of sir John Chandos, a Breton drew his sword, and could not resist from beginning the battle : he struck an English squire, named Simkin Dodenhale, and beat him so much about the breast with his sword that he knocked him off his horse on the ground. Sir John Chandos, who heard the noise behind him, turned round, and saw his squire on the ground and persons beating him. This enraged him more than before : he said to his men, ' Sirs, what are you about ? how suffer you this man to be slain ? Dismount, dismount : ' and at the instant he was on foot, as were all his company. Simkin was rescued, and the battle began.

Sir John Chandos, who was a strong and bold knight, and cool in all his undertakings, had his banner advanced before him, surrounded by his men, with the scutcheon above his arms, he himself was dressed in a large robe which fell to the ground,

ground, blazoned with his arms on white farsenet, argent a pile gules; one on his breast, and the other on his back; so that he appeared resolved on some adventurous undertaking; and in this state, with sword in hand, he advanced on foot towards the enemy.

This morning there had been a hoar frost, which had made the ground slippery; so that as he marched he entangled his legs with his robe, which was of the longest, and made a stumble: during which time a squire, called James de St. Martin (a strong expert man), made a thrust at him with his lance, which hit him in the face, below the eye, between the nose and forehead. Sir John Chandos did not see the aim of the stroke, for he had lost the eye on that side five years ago, on the heaths of Bourdeaux, at the chase of a stag: what added to this misfortune, sir John had not put down his vizor, so that in stumbling he bore upon the lance, and helped it to enter into him. The lance, which had been struck from a strong arm, hit him so severely that it entered as far as the brain, and then the squire drew it back to him again.

The great pain was too much for sir John, so he fell to the ground, and turned twice over in great agony, like one who had received his death wound. Indeed, since the blow, he never uttered a word. His people, on seeing this mishap, were like madmen. His uncle, sir Edward Clifford, hastily advanced, and, striding over the body, (for the French were endeavouring to get possession

sion of it), defended it most valiantly, and gave such well-directed blows with his sword that none dared to approach him. Two other knights, namely sir John Chambo and sir Bertrand de Caffilies\*, were like men distracted at seeing their master lie thus on the ground.

The Bretons, who were more numerous than the English, were much rejoiced when they saw their chief thus prostrate, and greatly hoped he was mortally wounded. They therefore advanced, crying out, ' By God, my lords of England, you will all stay with us, for you cannot now escape.'

The English performed wonderful feats of arms, as well to extricate themselves from the danger they were in as to revenge their commander, sir John Chandos, whom they saw in so piteous a state. A squire attached to sir John marked out this James de St. Martin, who had given the blow: he fell upon him in such a rage, and struck him with his lance as he was flying, that he ran him through both his thighs, and then withdrew his lance: however, in spite of this, James de St. Martin continued the fight.

Now if lord Thomas Percy, who had first arrived at the bridge, had imagined any thing what was going forwards, sir John Chandos' men would have been considerably reinforced; but it was otherwise decreed; for, not hearing any thing of the Bretons since he had seen them advancing

---

\* Sir John Chambo,—sir John Caffilies. Q. Barnes calls the last Caff.

in a large body towards the bridge, he thought they might have retreated; so that lord Thomas and his men continued their march, keeping the road to Poitiers, ignorant of what was passing.

Though the English fought so bravely at the bridge of Lussac, in the end they could not withstand the force of the Bretons and French, but were defeated, and the greater part made prisoners: Sir Edward Clifford stood firm, and would not quit the body of his nephew.

If the French had had their horses, they would have gone off with honour, and have carried with them good prisoners; but, as I have before said, their servants had gone away with them. Those of the English also had retreated, and quitted the scene of battle. They remained therefore in bad plight, which sorely vexed them, and said among themselves, 'This is a bad piece of business: the field is our own, and yet we cannot return through the fault of our servants. It is not proper for us who are armed and fatigued to march through this country on foot, which is quite against us; and we are upwards of six leagues from the nearest of any of our fortresses. We have, besides, our wounded and slain, whom we cannot leave behind.'

As they were in this situation, not knowing what to do, and had sent off two or three of the Bretons, disarmed, to hunt after and endeavour to find their servants, they perceived advancing towards them, sir Guiscard d'Angle, sir Louis de Harcourt, the lords de Partenay, de Tannaybouton, d'Argenton, de Pinanc, sir James de Surgeres,



Surgeres, and several others: They were full two hundred lances, and were seeking for the French; for they had received information that they were out on an excursion, and were then following the traces of their horses. They came forwards, therefore, with displayed banners fluttering in the wind, and marching in a disorderly manner.

The moment the Bretons and French saw them, they knew them for their enemies the barons and knights of Poitou. They therefore said to the English: 'You see that body of men coming to your assistance: we know we cannot withstand them: therefore,' calling each by his name, 'you are our prisoners; but we give you your liberty, on condition that you take care to keep us company; and we surrender ourselves to you, for we have it more at heart to give ourselves up to you than to those who are coming.' They answered, 'God's will be done.' The English thus obtained their liberty.

The Poitevins soon arrived, with their lances in their rests, shouting their war-cries; but the Bretons and French, retreating on one side, said, 'Hola! stop, my lords: we are prisoners already.' The English testified to the truth of this by adding, 'It is so: they belong to us.' Carnet was prisoner to sir Bertrand de Cassiles and sir Louis de St. Julien to sir John Chambo: there was not one, who had not his master.

These barons and knights of Poitou were struck with grief when they saw their sénéchal, sir John Chandos, lying in so doleful a way, and not able to speak.

**Speak.** They began grievously to lament his loss, **saying;** ‘Flower of knighthood! oh, sir John Chandos! cursed be the forging of that lance which wounded thee, and which has thus endangered thy life.’ Those who were around the body most tenderly bewailed him, which he heard, and answered with groans, but could not articulate a word. They wrung their hands, and tore their hair, uttering cries and complaints, more especially those who belonged to his household.

Sir John Chandos was disarmed very gently by his own servants, laid upon shields and targets, and carried at a foot’s pace to Mortemer, the nearest fort to the place where they were. The other barons and knights returned to Poitiers, carrying with them their prisoners. I heard that James Martin, he who had wounded sir John Chandos, suffered so much from his wounds that he died at Poitiers.

That gallant knight only survived one day and night. God have mercy on his soul! for never since a hundred years did there exist among the English one more courteous, nor fuller of every virtue and good quality than him.

When the prince, princess, earls of Cambridge and Pembroke, and the other English knights in Guienne heard of this event, they were completely disconcerted, and said, they had now lost every thing on both sides of the sea. Sir John was sincerely regretted by his friends of each sex; and some lords in France bewailed his loss. Thus it

happens through life. The English loved him for all the excellent qualities he was possessed of. The French hated him because they were afraid of him. Not but that I have heard him at the time regretted by renowned knights in France; for they said it was great pity he was slain, and that, if he could have been taken prisoner, he was so wise and full of devices, he would have found some means of establishing a peace between France and England; and was so much beloved by the king of England and his court that they would have believed what he should have said in preference to all others. Thus were the French and English great losers by his death, for never have I heard otherwise; but the English the most, for by his valour and prudence Guienne might have been totally recovered \*.

---

\* Sir John Chandos was buried at Mortemer. Underneath is his epitaph, from les Annales d'Aquitaine par Bouchet.

Je Jehan Chandault, des anglois capitaine,  
 Fort chevalier, de Poictou sénéchal  
 Après avoir fait guerre tres lointaine  
 Au rois françois, tant à pied qu' à cheval  
 Et pris Bertrand de Guesclin en un val,  
 Les Poitevins, prés Luffac, me diffirent,  
 A Mortemer, mon corps enterrer firent,  
 En un cercueil élevé tout de neuf,  
 L'an mil trois cens avec seixante neuf.

He founded and endowed the carmelite convent at Poitiers.

• He was never married. Elizabeth and Eleanor, two of his sisters, (the latter being the wife of sir Roger Collins) and Isabella, daughter to Margaret the third sister, at that time married to sir John Annesley, were found to be his next heirs.' BARNES.

Lord

Lord Thomas Percy was appointed sénéchal of Poitou after the death of sir John Chandos. His estates of St. Sauveur le Vicomte fell to the king of England, who gave them to one of his own knights, by name sir Aleyne Boxhull\*, an uncommonly able man. The prince of Wales succeeded as heir to the other riches of sir John Chandos, as he was never married, and therefore had no children, to the amount of four hundred thousand francs †.

Shortly afterwards, those captains who had been made prisoners at the bridge of Luffac were ransomed, and received their freedom on paying down the sums agreed on, in which the king of France assisted them. Sir Louis de St. Julien, sir William des Bourdes and Carnet le Breton returned to their garrisons.

---

\* Sir Aleyne Boxhull was the 52d knight of the Garter, constable of the Tower of London, custos of the parks of Clarendon, &c. He lies buried near St. Erkenwalde's shrine in St. Paul's church, about the year 1380.

Sir Aleyne Boxhull had a commission to restrain the excesses of Charles de Navarre in Normandy, and to put the castle in good repair, dated the 24th November, 1370.—RYMER.

† I should imagine Froissart must mean that the prince inherited all he possessed in Aquitaine, &c. but his sister's children were his heirs in England.

## CHAP X.

THE LORD DE COUCY AND THE LORD DE POMMIERS ARE UNWILLING TO TAKE PART WITH EITHER SIDE IN THIS WAR.—THE LORDS DE MALEVAL AND DE MARNEIL TURN TO THE FRENCH.

**A**T this time, there were knights in France greatly hurt at seeing this war between the two kings carried on with increasing vigour; and in particular, the lord de Coucy, who was much interested in it, as indeed he ought to be, for he held a very large estate in England, as well in his own right as in that of his wife, who was daughter of the king of England; which estate it would be necessary for him to renounce, if he wished to serve the king of France, whose kinsman and countryman he was: he therefore thought it most profitable to dissemble between the two kings, and to travel to foreign parts. He very wisely took all his measures; and, having obtained leave of the king of France, he set out with few attendants, and went to Savoy, where he was honourably received by the earl, barons and knights of that country. When he had remained there as long as he judged proper, he departed, and, continuing his road, entered Lombardy, visited the lords of Milan, the lords Galeas and lord Barnabo Visconti, when at first he was made heartily welcome by them.

In

In like manner did sir Aimemon de Pommiers, who was one of the prince's knights, quit the duchy of Aquitaine. He declared, that during this war, he would not bear arms for one side nor the other. This knight crossed the sea to Cyprus: he visited the holy sepulchre, and travelled to several other places.

At this period, sir John de Bourbon \* came to Paris. He held some lands of the prince; and the king of France would have gladly seen him return the homage to the prince, but the count de la Marche would not listen to it. The lord de Pierre Buffiere, a Limousin knight at that time at Paris, followed his example. But two other barons and great lords in Limousin unfortunately acted otherwise: sir Louis de Maleval and sir Raymond de Marneil his nephew, who being at Paris turned Frenchmen, and from their fortresses afterwards made a disastrous war on the prince.

The king of England and his council were much vexed at this; for it appeared that the barons and knights of Guienne thus changed their sides without any constraint, and of their own free will. The king therefore, by the advice of his council, ordered letters to be written and sealed with his seal, which he ordered to be sent by two or three of his knights into Poitou and Aquitaine, to publish them in all the cities, castles and principal towns.

---

\* Sir John de Bourbon. ' He was son of sir James de Bourbon who combated the free companies, chapter ccxxv, and was count de la Marche.'—DENYS SAUVAGE—*Annot.* 120.

At this time, sir Caponnel de Caponnal was delivered from his prison at Agen, in exchange for one of the prince's knights, by name sir Thomas Banaster, who had been taken in a skirmish before Perigord. But the counsellor of state who had been sent with him remained prisoner in Agen, and sir Caponnel returned to France. We will report the letter which the king of England sent into Aquitaine.

---

## CHAP XI.

THE FORM OF THE LETTER WHICH THE ENGLISH KING SENT INTO AQUITAINE.—CHA-  
TELHERAUT IS TAKEN BY THE FRENCH,  
AND BELLEPERCHE IS BESIEGED.

**E**DWARD, by the grace of God, king of England, lord of Ireland and of Aquitaine, to all who shall see or hear these present letters: Know, that we having considered the matter of the boundaries of our lordship of Aquitaine, as well as its extent under various lords, have had information relative to some oppressions done, or intended to have been done, by our very dear son the prince of Wales, to this lordship aforesaid: for which cause we hold it a duty to endeavour to obviate and remedy any such improper acts, and  
to

to conciliate all hatred and rançour that may have arisen between us and our loyal friends and subjects. We therefore announce, pronounce and ordain, out of our deliberate and perfect good will, and by the resolutions of our council for this cause assembled, that our very dear son the prince of Wales desist from all sorts of exactions, done or about to be done; and that he restore and make restitution to all of each sex who may have been oppressed by him, or by his officers in Aquitaine, with all costs, fees and expenses that they may have incurred under the name of these taxes, aids or fouages.

And if any of our feal subjects and friends, as well prelates as other members of the church, universities, barons, knights, townships, inhabitants of cities and large towns have turned, or may be willing to turn, through bad information or weak advice, to the party of our adversary the king of France, we pardon this misdeed, if, after having read this letter, they shall return to us within one month from the date hereof. And we entreat those our loyal and trusty friends, that they so comport themselves not to draw on them any reproach as to their faith and homage; which thing would greatly displease us, and with sorrow should we perceive it. If our very dear son the prince of Wales, or any of his dependants complain of being hurt or oppressed, either now or in former times, we will have such oppressions amended; so that in reason it may be sufficient to encourage love, peace and concord between us and those



within our boundaries in our aforesaid lordship. And, in order that these things may be publicly known, we will that each person have a copy of this present letter, the conditions of which we have solemnly sworn to observe, and not break through, upon the body of JESUS CHRIST, in the presence of our very dear son John duke of Lancaster, William earl of Salisbury, the earl of Warwick, the earl of Hereford, Walter Manny, the bastard of Percy, lords Neville, Bouchier and Stafford, Richard Pembridge, Roger Beauchamp, Guy Brian, the lords Mohun and Delaware, Aleyne Boxhul and Richard Sterry, knights. Given at our palace of Westminster, the fifth day of November, in the forty-fourth year of our reign\*.

This letter was carried by two of the king of England's knights into the principality and duchy of Aquitaine, proclaimed and published every where. Copies of it were promptly and secretly sent to Paris, to the viscount de la Rochechouart, the lords de Maleval and de Marneil, as well to several others of the French nation as to those who had turned to that interest.

Notwithstanding the letter they had proclaimed in the country of Aquitaine and elsewhere, I never heard that it had any effect, or that any one was prevented by it from following his own inclinations; but that more turned to the party of

---

\* This letter is not in Rymer.

France, and the French daily advanced in their conquests.

As soon as sir Louis de St. Julien was returned to la Roche-posay, sir William des Bourdes to his garrison of la Haye in Touraine, and Carnet le Breton to St. Savin, they secretly planned a new expedition of men at arms, and companions well mounted on whom they could depend. They set off to scale the walls of the town of Chatelheraut, and, arriving there at early morn, would have made prisoner sir Louis de Harcourt, who was sleeping at his hôtel in the town, not any way suspecting such an enterprise, if he had not fled with his bed-clothes, without shoes or stockings, from house to house, and from garden to garden, in great dread of being taken by the French, who had scaled the walls of the town, until at last he arrived at the bridge of Chatelheraut, which his people had fortified: there he saved himself, and remained a considerable time.

The Bretons and French, however, were masters of the whole town, and placed a strong garrison in it, of which Carnet was captain. This garrison advanced daily to engage with those who still kept

---

\* His name was Jean de Keranlouet. In the proofs attached to the *Histoire de la Bretagne*, are several acquittances from Jean de Keranlouet, in which he is styled, *Ecuyer, Huisfier d'Armes du Roi nôtre Sire, Capitaine de la Ville de la Roche-posay*, for his own pay as well as for his soldiers. He was to conduct four hundred combatants into Guienne 1371; and also to march to the assistance of Moncontour.

possession

possession of the bridge ; and many a gallant skirmish and feat of arms were performed.

Duke Louis de Bourbon was much enraged that the English and free companies should keep possession of his country, the Bourbonnois, and that Ortigo, Bernard de Wist and Bernard de la Salle, should hold his castle of Belleperche, and detain his mother prisoner in it : he resolved, therefore, to set on foot an expedition of men at arms, and lay siege to the castle of Belleperche, which, he declared, he would not quit until he had re-taken it. He spoke of it to the king of France, who instantly promised to assist him in the siege with men and money. He left Paris, having ordered his rendezvous at Moulins in the Bourbonnois, and at St. Pourfaint\*, whither there came a numerous body of men at arms and able combatants.

The lord de Beaujeu came to serve him, with three hundred lances : the lords de Villars and de Roucillon, with one hundred ; and numbers of barons and knights from Auvergne and Forêts, of which he was lord paramount, through the lady his wife, the daughter of that gallant lord Beroald count dauphin.

The duke arrived and fixed his quarters before the castle of Belleperche, where he built a large and strong redoubt, in which his men might be sheltered every night, and skirmish with the garrison during the day. He had also brought and

---

\* St. Pourfaint,—a town in Auvergne, diocese of Clermont.

pointed

pointed against the castle four large machines, which kept continually throwing, night and day, stones and logs of wood, so that they broke through the roofs of all the houses, and beat down the greater part of the towers.

The mother of the duke of Bourbon, who was a prisoner within the castle, was much alarmed, and sent frequently to entreat her son to abstain from this mode of attack, for these machines annoyed her exceedingly ; but the duke, who knew for certain that these requests came from his enemies, replied that he would not desist happen what would.

When the garrison found themselves so much harassed, and that the French force was daily increasing ; for sir Louis de Sancerre, marshal of France, had just arrived with a large body of men at arms ; they resolved to send and acquaint sir John Devereux, sénéchal of Limousin, who resided at la Souteraine\*, two short days journey from them, of their distress, and who knew that, when these lords of Poitou and Gascony had made an excursion from Quercy, it was upon the faith, that if they should take any castles in France, and were besieged in them, they would be assisted.

They wrote their letters, and sent them off in the night by one of their servants to the castle of sir John Devereux. Sir John recognized the messenger by the tokens he mentioned, and, having

---

\* La Souteraine,—a town in Limousin, about two leagues from Limoges.

read the letters, said, ' that he would most willingly acquit himself of his engagement, and that the more effectually to do so, he would immediately wait on the prince and the lords who were with him, at Angoulême, and exert himself so that the garrison of Belleperche should be reinforced.'

Sir John Devereux set out, after having given proper directions respecting his castle and garrison to his officers, and, being arrived at Angoulême, found there the prince, the earl of Cambridge, the earl of Pembroke, sir John Mountague, sir Robert Knolles, lord Thomas Percy, sir Thomas Felton, sir Guiscard d'Angle, the captal de Buch and many others. He explained to them, how these free companies in the castle of Belleperche were besieged and much straitened by the French under the duke de Bourbon and the count de St. Pol\*. The lords, on hearing this statement, replied with great cheerfulness, that they must be relieved, according to the promises which had been made them.

This business was intrusted to the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke; and the prince issued a summons to all his vassals, who, in sight of it, were to assemble in the town of Limoges. Upon which, knights, squires, free companies, and men

---

\* Denys Sauvage thinks it ought to be the count de Sancerre, as the count de St. Pol's name has not been mentioned before. I should be of this opinion, if every copy I have, printed and MS. did not say St. Pol.

at arms, marched to that place, according to their orders; and, when they were mustered, they amounted to upwards of fifteen hundred lances and about three thousand others. They marched to Belleperche, where they encamped themselves opposite to the French.

The French kept themselves close in their redoubt, which was as strong and as well fortified as a good town might be. The English foragers were at a loss where to seek for provisions, so that, whenever it was possible, some were brought to them from Poitiers.

Sir Louis de Sancerre, marshal of France, gave exact information of the number and condition of the English to the king of France, and to those knights who had remained at Paris: he sent also a proclamation, which he had affixed to the gates of the palace. It ran in these words:

‘ Ye knights and squires who are anxious of renown, and seek for deeds of arms, I inform you for a truth, that the earl of Cambridge and the earl of Pembroke are arrived with their troops at Belleperche, with the intention of raising the siege which we have so long made: we have so much straitened the garrison of the castle that it must immediately surrender, or our enemies beat us in a pitched battle. Come therefore hither, directly, for you will have opportunities of exhibiting your prowess in arms; and know that the English are encamped so much apart, and in such positions, that they may be wonderfully annoyed.’

Upon

Upon this exhortation and request of the marshal, several good knights and squires of France advanced to those parts; and I know myself that the governor of Blois, named Alart de Toustanne, went thither with fifty lances; as did also the count de Porcien, and his brother sir Hugh de Porcien.

---

## CHAP. XII.

THE EARLS OF CAMBRIDGE AND PEMBROKE  
CARRY OFF THE MOTHER OF THE DUKE OF  
BOURBON WITH THE GARRISON OF BELLE-  
PERCHE.—THE DUKE OF BOURBON TAKES  
POSSESSION OF THAT CASTLE.

**W**HEN the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke had remained before the French army at Belleperche fifteen days, and did not see any signs of the French quitting their redoubt to fight with them, they called a council, in which they resolved to send to them a herald, to know what they meant to do. Chandos the herald was ordered on this business, and it was repeated to him what he was to say: he therefore went to them, and said; ‘ My masters and lords send me to you, and inform you by my mouth, that they are quite astonished you have allowed them to remain fifteen days here, and have not sallied out of  
yo

your fort to give them battle. They therefore tell you, that if you will come forth to meet them, they will permit you to choose any plot of ground for the field of battle ; and let God give the event of it to whomsoever he pleases.'

The duke of Bourbon made to this the following reply : ' Chandos, you will tell your masters, that I shall not combat as they may wish or desire. I know well enough where they are ; but for all that, I will not quit my fort nor raise the siege, until I shall have re-conquered the castle of Belleperche.' ' My lord,' answered the herald, ' I will not fail to report what you have said.'

The herald set out, and on his return gave the duke's answer, which was not very agreeable. They called another council, and when it was over, gave to Chandos a proposal, for him to carry to the French. He did so, and said ; ' Gentlemen, my lords and masters let you know, that since you are not willing to accept the offer they have made you, three days hence, between nine and twelve o'clock in the morning, you, my lord duke of Bourbon, will see your lady-mother placed on horseback, and carried away. Consider this, and rescue her if you can.'

The duke answered ; ' Chandos, Chandos, tell your masters, they carry on a most disgraceful war, when they seize an ancient lady from among her domestics, and carry her away like a prisoner. It was never seen formerly, that in the warfare between gentlemen, ladies or damsels were treated as prisoners. It will certainly be very unpleasant

to



to me to see my lady-mother thus carried off: we must recover her as soon as we can: but the castle they cannot take with them: that, therefore, we will have. Since you have twice come hither with propositions, you will bear this from me to your masters, that if they will draw out fifty men, we will draw out the same number, and let the victory fall where it may.' 'My lord,' replied the herald, 'I will relate to them every thing you have told me.'

At these words, Chandos left them, and returned to the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke and the other lords, and told them the offer the duke of Bourbon had sent them. They were advised not to accept it. Preparations were therefore made for the departure of the army, and to carry off with them the lady and the garrison, which had been exceedingly harraffed by the machines of the enemy.

When the appointed day arrived, they ordered their trumpets to sound at early morning: upon which every one armed himself and drew up, both horse and foot, in order of battle, as if they expected a combat, with their banners and pennons flying before them. In this manner were they arrayed; and on this day sir John Montague, nephew to the earl of Salisbury, displayed his banner. They had ordered their trumpets and minstrels to sound very loud; and at nine o'clock the garrison and madame de Bourbon came out of the castle of Belleperche. They mounted her on a palfrey

palfrey handsomely equipped for her. She was accompanied by her ladies and damsels.

The English army marched away at mid-day. Sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt and sir John Devereux\* attended upon madame de Bourbon; and in this manner they returned to the principality, where the lady remained a considerable time a prisoner to the free companions at la Roche Vaucloix in Limoufin†.

This capture never pleased the prince, who, whenever it was mentioned, said, that if any others than the free companies had taken the duchess, she should instantly have had her liberty: and when the captains of these free companies spoke to him on the subject, he told them to

\* Sir John Devereux—banneret—76th knight of the Garter, a baron from the 8th to the 16th Richard II.—See Dugdale.—Steward of the household to Richard II. constable and governor of the cinque ports. Died suddenly 16th Richard II. Buried Grayfriars, London.

† Sir Nicholas Lovaine held Penshurst 44th Edward III. and married Margaret, eldest daughter of John Vere, earl of Oxford,—re-married to Henry lord Beaumont, and after to sir John Devereux, knight of the Garter, lord warden of the cinque ports, steward of the household 11th Richard II.; in whose 16th year he had licence to embattle his mansion-house at Penshurst, and his daughter and heiress was married to William lord Fitzwalter, but he only enjoyed this manor in right of his wife.—*Anglia MSS. from Philpot's Kent*, p. 270.

† In the curious life of the duke de Bourbon, printed at Paris 1612, from old MSS. the account of this siege is very differently related, and entirely to the honour of the French. The duchess is there said to be carried prisoner to the tower of Bron, near to Brouage on the sea-coast.

make some sort of an exchange, for him to get back his knight, sir Simon Burley \*, whom the French had taken.

You may suppose the duke of Bourbon was greatly incensed when he saw his lady-mother carried away from the castle of Belleperche in the Bourbonois. Soon after her departure, he marched from the redoubt, and sent his men to take possession of his own castle of Belleperche, which the English had left quite empty.

Thus ended this grand expedition, and each withdrew to his usual place of residence. The French, who were under the duke of Bourbon retired to the garrisons from whence they had come. The duke returned with his knights and squires to the king of France, who received him with great joy, and entertained him handsomely. The earl of Cambridge went to his brother at Angoulême; and the earl of Pembroke and his troops to Mortagne in Poitou. Those free companies and men at arms who had been in Belleperche went into Poitou and Saintonge, seeking for provisions, and committing many disgraceful acts, from which they had not the inclination to refrain themselves, nor power to restrain others.

Sir Robert Knolles, shortly after this, left the prince, and returned to his castle of Derval in Brittany, where he had not been a month, before

---

\* Sir Simon Burley—knight—was 75th knight of the Garter, warden of the cinque ports, governor of Windsor and Dover castles. Beheaded 1388. See Hollingshead.

the king of England sent him positive orders to set out, without delay, and cross the sea to him in England, as he would find his profit in it. Sir Robert very willingly obeyed this summons: having made his preparations, he embarked and landed in Cornwall, at St. Michael's Mount, and thence continued his road until he arrived at Windsor, where he found the king, who was right glad to see him, as were all the English barons; for they thought they should have much need of him, as he was so great a captain and leader of men at arms.

---

### CHAP. XIII.

THE FOUR BROTHERS OF FRANCE HAVE A MEETING.—THEIR PREPARATIONS FOR THE WAR.—THE MOTHER OF THE DUKE OF BOURBON OBTAINS HER LIBERTY.—A TREATY ENTERED INTO BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND NAVARRE.

AT this time the duke of Anjou set out from Toulouse, and marched in great array through the kingdom of France: he continued his route until he arrived in Paris, where he found the king and his other brothers the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, who received him with infinite pleasure.

The four brothers, during the time they were together in Paris, held many councils and consultations on the state of the kingdom, and in what manner they should best act during the ensuing summer. It was determined to raise two large armies, and make an incursion to Aquitaine. The duke of Anjou was to command one of these armies, which should enter Guienne by la Réole and Bergerac: the duke of Berry the other towards Limoges and Quercy, when these two armies were to unite and march to Angoulême, to besiege therein the prince of Wales. It was also proposed and determined in these consultations to recal that valiant knight sir Bertrand du Guesclin, who had so gallantly and loyally fought for the crown of France, and entreat him to accept the charge of constable of France.

When king Charles, his brothers and his council, had completely arranged their future plans, and had enjoyed themselves together for some time, the duke of Anjou, early in May, took his leave of them, to return the first to his government, for he had the longest journey to make. He was escorted by the barons and knights of France, being much beloved by them, and pursued his journey until he came to Montpellier, where he tarried upwards of a month, and then returned to Toulouse.

He directly collected as many men at arms as he was able, wherever he could hear of them, and soon had a large force from those who had kept the field guarding the frontiers of the English in Rouergue

Rouergue and Quercy: for le petit Mechin, Naudon de Pans, Perrot de Savoye, le bourg Camus, Anthoine le Negre, Lanuit, Jaques de Bray and numbers of their companions had remained all the year at Cahors, where they had ravaged and ruined the country.

On the other hand, the duke of Berry went to Bourges in Berry, where he had issued a grand summons to all knights and squires of France, and Burgundy.

The duke of Bourbon had gone into his own country, where he had given orders concerning this intended expedition, and had collected a large body of knights and squires from the country of Forêts and the Bourbonnois. His brother, count Peter d'Alençon made preparations in another part, and with good effect.

Sir Guy de Blois, at this period, was returned from Prussia, where he had been made a knight, and displayed his banner in an enterprize against the enemies of God. As soon as this gallant knight arrived in Hainault, and was informed of the expedition which his cousins of France were about to undertake in Aquitaine, he made immediate preparations for joining it; and, setting out from Hainault with all his array, he arrived at Paris to present himself to the king. He was gladly received by him, and ordered to join the duke of Berry with a command of knights, squires and men at arms in the expedition. Sir Guy de Blois, therefore, left the city of Paris, and rode to Orleans in his way to Berry.

In like manner as the king of France had arranged his armies, so did the king of England by two armies and two expeditions. It was ordered that the duke of Lancaster should march with four hundred men at arms and as many archers into Aquitaine, to reinforce his brothers; for it was thought that the greatest force of the enemy would be sent to that country. The king and his council determined that another army of men at arms and archers should enter Picardy under sir Robert Knolles, who was perfectly capable of such a command, having learnt it under the most able masters for a considerable time.

Sir Robert, at the request of the king, willingly undertook this expedition: he promised to cross the sea to Calais, to pass through the whole kingdom of France, and to fight with the French, if they were bold enough to meet him in the field. Of this he seemed quite certain, and made wonderful preparations for himself, as well as for all those who were to accompany him.

The mother of the duke of Bourbon about this time obtained her liberty, being exchanged for sir Simon Burley, the prince of Wales's knight. Sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt was very instrumental in bringing this business to an end, for which the duke of Bourbon and the queen of France testified their obligations to him.

There had been for a considerable time, long negotiations carried on between the king of France and the king of Navarre, who resided at Cherbourg. The ministers of both kings managed the  
the

the business in such a manner that they informed the king of France he had not any reason for waging war against his brother-in-law the king of Navarre. They added, that for the present he had enough on his hands with his war with England, and that he had better leave things as they then were, lest greater evils might arise; for, if the king of Navarre should consent to admit the English into his forts in Coutantin, they would harass the country of Normandy most grievously, which was a thing to be well considered and attended to.

Upon receiving this information and advice, the king of France consented to a peace. He went to the town of Rouen, where all the treaties were drawn up and confirmed. The archbishop of Rouen, the count d'Alençon, the count de Sallebruche, sir William des Dormans\* and sir Robert Lorris waited on the king of Navarre, whom they found at Vernon. He made for them grand dinners and magnificent feasts; after which they conducted him to the king of France at Rouen, when these treaties and alliances were again read, sworn to, confirmed and sealed. It seems that the king of Navarre, by the articles of this peace was to renounce whatever engagements he may have entered into with the king of England, and that he himself, on his return to Navarre, was to declare war against him. For greater security of the affection between him and the king

---

\* Sir William des Dormans—was chancellor of France.



of France, he was to leave in his hands his two sons, Charles and Peter, as hostages. Upon this treaty being concluded, the two kings left Rouen, and came to Paris, where there were again great feasts. When they had sufficiently enjoyed and amused themselves, they took leave of each other. The king of Navarre quitted the king of France in the most amicable manner, leaving his two children with their uncle. He set out for Montpellier, and returned through that country to Foix, and from thence to his own kingdom of Navarre.

We will now return to what was passing in Aquitaine.

---

#### CHAP XIV.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN LEAVES SPAIN AND ARRIVES AT TOULOUSE, WHERE THE DUKE OF ANJOU RECEIVES HIM WITH GREAT JOY.—THEY TAKE TOGETHER SEVERAL CASTLES FROM THE ENGLISH.

**Y**OU know, as we have before mentioned it, that the duke of Anjou had been in France, and that, according to arrangements then made, upon his return to Languedoc, he was to invade, with his whole force, Guienne; for he never loved the prince of Wales nor the English, and indeed made no pretensions to that effect. Before he left Paris, the king of France, by his desire, had sent letters

letters and ambassadors to the king of Castile, to request he would send back sir Bertrand du Guesclin, for by so doing he would very much oblige him. At the same time, the king and duke of Anjou wrote most friendly letters to sir Bertrand himself.

The envoys made haste on their journey, and found king Henry with sir Bertrand in the city of Léon in Spain, to whom they delivered their letters and the message from the king of France.

The king of Spain never wished to detain sir Bertrand, nor would have forgiven himself for so doing. Sir Bertrand therefore made his preparations in haste, and, taking leave of king Henry, set out with his attendants, and continued his road until he came to Toulouse, where the duke of Anjou was. He had already there assembled a very large force of men at arms, knights and squires, and waited for nothing but the arrival of sir Bertrand du Guesclin; so that upon his coming the duke of Anjou and all the French were mightily rejoiced. Orders were given to march from Toulouse, and invade the territories of the prince.

The duke of Lancaster at this time was arrived at Southampton, with four hundred men at arms and an equal number of archers. He embarked them and every necessary provision and stores on board ships, with the intent of sailing for Bourdeaux, provided they might have a favourable wind.

With the duke, and under his command, were the lord Roos (of Hamlake), sir Michael de la Pole,

Pole \*, fir Robert le Roux †, fir John de St. Lo, and fir William Beauchamp ‡.

The duke of Anjou left the city of Toulouse with a great and well ordered array. He was attended by the count d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albret, the count de Perigord, the count de Comminges, the viscount de Carmaing, the count de Lisle, the viscount de Bruniguel, the viscount de Narbonne, the viscount de Talar, the lord de la Barde, the lord de Pincornet, fir Bertrand Tande, the sénéchal of Toulouse, the sénéchal of Carcassonne, the sénéchal of Beaucaire and several others, amounting in the whole to upwards of two thousand lances, knights and squires, and six thousand footmen, armed with pikes and shields. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin was appointed to the command of all this force.

They directed their march through the Agénois; and being joined by more than a thousand combatants from the free companies, who had waited for them all the winter in Quercy, they made for Agen.

The first fort they came to was that of Moiffac §. The whole country were so frightened at the arrival of the duke of Anjou, and the large army he had brought, that they trembled before him, and

---

\* Sir Michael de la Pole, afterwards earl of Suffolk, and favourite of Richard II.—See Dugdale.

† Sir Robert le Roux,—Barnes calls fir Robert Ros.

‡ Sir William Beauchamp,—Lord Abergavenny.—DUGDALE.

§ Moiffac,—a town in Quercy, 12 leagues from Agen.

neither towns nor castles had any inclination to hold out against him. When he arrived before Moissac, the inhabitants instantly surrendered and turned to the French. They then advanced to Agen, which followed this example. They afterwards marched towards Tonneins \* on the Garonne ; and the French went on unmolested, following the course of the river Garonne, in order to have plenty of forage : they came to Port St. Marie †, which immediately surrendered. The French placed men at arms and garrisons in all these towns. The town and castle of Tonneins did the same, in which they placed a captain and twenty lances to guard it. They afterwards took the road to Montpezat ‡ and Aiguillon §, burning and destroying all the country.

When they came before Montpezat, which is a good town and has a strong castle, those within were so much frightened by the duke of Anjou that they directly opened their gates. The French then advanced to the strong castle of Aiguillon, where they only remained four days ; for then the garrison surrendered to the duke, not being such men as sir Walter Manny commanded, when he defended it against John duke of Normandy, afterwards king of France. The inhabitants of Ber-

---

\* Tonneins,—a town of Agénois on the Garonne, 41 leagues from Toulouse.

† Porte St. Marie, on the Garonne, below Agen.

‡ Montpezat,—a village in Guienne, near Tonneins.

§ Aiguillon,—a town of Guienne, one league from Tonneins.

gerac were very much astonished at their having so done: for the governors, at this time, of Bergerac, were the captal de Buch and sir Thomas Felton, who had with them one hundred lances, English and Gascons.

---



---

## CHAP. XV.

### THE DUKE OF BERRY INVADES LIMOUSIN.

**J**UST as the duke of Anjou and his army had invaded the territories of the prince by the way of Toulouse and Agen, so did the duke of Berry with his army enter the Limousin. He had full twelve hundred lances and three thousand footmen, who conquered towns and castles, and burnt and destroyed the country they marched through.

With the duke of Berry were, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, sir Guy de Blois, sir Robert d'Alençon count du Perche, sir John d'Armagnac, sir Hugh Dauphin, sir John de Villemur, the lords de Beaujeu, de Villars, de Senac, sir Geoffry de Montagu, sir Louis de Maleval, sir Raymond de Marneil, sir John de Boulogne, his uncle sir Geoffry de Boulogne, the viscount d'Uzes, the lords de Sully, de Talenton, de Confant, Dappechere, Dacon, sir John Damentue,

menue, Ymbaut de Pefchin, and many other good barons, knights and squires.

This army entered Limoufin, where they did infinite mischief, and advanced to besiege the city of Limoges. In this city were a body of English, whom sir Hugh Calverley, the sénéchal of Limoufin had placed there; but he was not the master, for the bishop of the city governed it, in whom the prince of Wales put much confidence, looking upon him as his steady friend.

The prince of Wales, who kept his court at Angoulême, had received information of these two grand expeditions of the dukes of Anjou and of Berry, and how they had invaded his principality at two different places. It was also told the prince, that as far as could be imagined, they were marching to form a junction near Angoulême, to besiege him and the princess therein, and advised him to consider of it.

The prince, who was valour itself, and full of resources, replied, that 'his enemies should never find him shut up in town or castle, and that he would immediately march and take the field against them.'

Clerks and knights were instantly employed to write and send off letters to loyal friends and subjects in Poitou, Saintonge, la Rochelle, Rouergue, Quercy, Gorre, Bigorre and Agénois, commanding them, with as many men as they could bring, to meet him at the town of Cognac. His rendezvous was fixed there; and he soon left Angoulême,

ême, attended by the princess and his young son Richard.

But during the time this summons was sent, every one making his preparations, the French kept advancing, burning and ravaging the country. They came before Linde, a good town situated upon the river Dordonne, one league from Bergerac: a valiant knight of Gascony, named Thonius de Batefol \*, was the governor of it.

The duke of Anjou, the count d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albret, the count de Perigord, the viscount de Carmaing, and all the other barons with their men, came thither and formed the siege in a regular manner, saying they would not depart without having taken it.

This town was large, strong and well provided with all sorts of provision and artillery; for the captain de Buch and sir Thomas Felton had been there a fortnight before, and had reinforced it. They thought that Linde was very capable of holding out, if those within were determined, considering the assistance they might draw from Bergerac, should there be occasion. But the inhabitants were so wonderfully inclined to the French that they entered into a negotiation with the duke of Anjou, and listened to his promises, which made them press the governor, sir Thonius, that he also consented to be a true Frenchman, upon

---

\* Sir Thonius de Batefol. It is so in all my printed copies but otherwise in the MSS. One has *Thomas*. Q. if it should not be so.

confiderat

consideration of receiving a large sum of money, and having a good annuity from the duke for his life.

Every thing being thus settled, the town was to be delivered up to the French. This treaty was, however, known at Bergerac the evening preceding the day of surrender. The earl of Cambridge had just arrived there with two hundred lances, and was present when this information was given. The captain and sir Thomas Felton were thunderstruck at the intelligence, and said they would be present at this surrender. Having ordered their troops, they set out from Bergerac after midnight, and rode towards the town of Linde. They came there by day-break, and, ordering one of the gates to be opened, pushed forward without stopping until they arrived at the other gate, through which the French were to enter: indeed, they were already assembled there in crowds, for sir Thonius was about to allow them to enter the gate. On seeing which, the captain, grasping his sword, dismounted, as did all his troops, and, advancing to sir Thonius, said: 'Sir Thonius, thou wicked traitor, thou shalt be the first dead man; and never more shalt thou commit another treason.' Upon which he thrust his sword into him, and with so much force that it went through his body and came out upwards of a foot on the other side, and struck him down dead.

The



The French, on seeing the banners of the capital de Buch and sir Thomas Felton, immediately retreated, having failed in their attempt.

Thus did the town continue English, but **was** in great danger of being burnt, and the inhabitants slain, because they had consented to **this** treaty. They excused themselves wisely and prudently, saying that what they had done and consented to was through fear, and principally through their governor, who had brought this business about. The lords appeared to believe all this, and the inhabitants remained in peace; but the capital and sir Thomas Felton continued in the town as long as the duke of Anjou lay before it, and until he had taken another road.

We will now speak a little of the state and condition of England, for that is now necessary, and of the invasion of France by sir Robert Knolles.

---

## CHAP. XVI.

A TRUCE IS ESTABLISHED BETWEEN ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.—SIR ROBERT KNOLLES OVER-RUNS, BURNS AND RAVAGES THE WHOLE COUNTRIES OF PICARDY AND THE VERMANDOIS.

**W**HEN sir Robert Knolles was about to leave England, there were many councils held between the English and Scots. They were so

well conducted by the able ministers of both kingdoms that a truce was established between each king, kingdom, subjects, and adherents, for nine years.

The Scots, by this treaty, might arm and hire themselves out like to others for subsidies, taking which side they pleased, either English or French: by which means sir Robert increased his army with one hundred lances\*.

When sir Robert and all who were to accompany him were ready, and had arrived at Dover, they passed the sea, he himself crossing the last, and landed at Calais, where, on his disembarking, he was received with great joy by the governor, sir Nicholas Stambourn, and his brother soldiers.

When they had refreshed themselves for seven days, and had formed their plans with respect to the parts of France into which they should carry their attack, they ordered their baggage and stores to advance, and took the field in a very handsome manner. They were about fifteen hundred lances and four thousand archers, including the Welshmen. Sir Robert was accompanied, according to

---

\* Mezeray says, this truce was for three years—Buchanan, fourteen,—Froissart, nine.—*Note in Barnes*, p. 800.

I cannot find this truce in the *Fœdera*. On the contrary, there is an offensive and defensive treaty with the king of France, dated at Edinburgh castle, 28th October, 1371, in which it expressly mentions that no truce is to be entered into, without including both France and Scotland, by either of the parties.—For more particulars, see Rymer.

the king's orders, by sir Thomas Grantson\*, sir Aleyne Boxhull, sir Gilbert Gifford, the lord de Salvatier†, sir John Bouchier‡, sir William de Merville§, sir Geoffry Urswell||, and many other knights and squires, expert and able men at arms, who marched this first day pretty near to Fiennes¶.

Sir Moreau de Fiennes, who at that time was constable of France, resided in his castle with a great number of men at arms, knights and squires, all prepared and ready to receive the English. On the morrow, when they advanced towards the castle and drew up to the attack, they found they should not gain any thing, so they marched off through the county of Guines, and entered that of Faukenbourg, burning every thing on their road, and came before the city of Terouenne, but did not attack it; for it was so well garrisoned with

\* Sir Thomas Grantson,—82d knight of the Garter.—See Grandison in Dugdale.

† ‘Le sire de Salvatier.’ Q.

‡ Sir John Bouchier,—86th knight of the Garter—a baron.—See Dugdale.

§ De Merville. Q. if not Neville. I believe it to be sir William Neville, one of the sons of Ralph lord Neville, of Raby.—See Dugdale.

Barnes names sir *Hugh* Meinel, sir Walter Fitzwalter, and sir John Menstreworth.

|| I have called this person *Urswell*, after Barnes; but, as Froissart writes it *Ourcelay*, it is probably one of the Worsley family. It may also be sir Hugh Wrottesley, spelled *Wortbesley* in Mills, who was 19th knight of the Garter, and perhaps with more probability.

¶ Fiennes,—a village in the Boulonnois, generality of Amiens.

men at arms that it would have been only lost trouble. They continued their march through the country of the Terouennois, to enter Artois; and, as they only advanced three or four leagues a day on account of their baggage and infantry, they took up their quarters in the large villages at the early hour of mid-day or noon. Thus did they advance with their whole army until they came before the city of Arras. The lords and principal captains were lodged in the town of Mount St. Eloy, near Arras, and their army in the environs; whence they pillaged and ravaged all the country round, as far as they dared to extend themselves.

The king of France had at this season ordered a number of men at arms to the different cities, fortresses, large towns, castles, bridges, and fords, to guard and defend those which should be attacked, and which they were not to quit on any account.

When sir Robert Knolles had refreshed himself and army for two days, he quitted St. Eloy, and marched from before Arras in good array. Sir William de Merville and sir Geoffry Urfwell, who were the marshals of the army, could not resist a wish to see those of Arras a little nearer. They quitted, therefore, the battalion, and advanced with about two hundred lances and four hundred archers, as far as the barriers of the suburbs of Arras, which they found well guarded by men at arms and cross-bows. The lord Charles de Poitiers was at that time in the town with madame

d'Artois, but he made not any attempt to fall out on the English or otherwise attack them.

The English, having finished their course, had halted a short time at the barriers; and, seeing no appearance of any one coming to them, they set out on their return to the main army, who were waiting for them drawn up in a line of battle. However, before they departed, they wished to leave a remembrance behind, and set fire to the suburbs of Arras, in order to entice the inhabitants out of the town, who had not any good will to do so. This fire did much mischief, for it burnt a large monastery of preaching friars, cloisters and all that was without the town.

After this, the English continued their march, taking the road to Bapaume\*, burning and ravaging the whole country. The army was constantly in motion, and, having entered the Vermandois, arrived at Roye†; which town they burnt, and then marched towards Ham‡ in Vermandois. All the inhabitants of the flat country had retired into this town, and into St. Quentin and Peronne, carrying with them every thing portable. The English found nothing but barns full of unthreshed corn, for it was now after August.

They advanced by easy marches, without any labour or fatigue, until they came to a rich coun-

---

\* Bapaume,—a strong town of Artois, six leagues from Arras.

† Roye,—a strong town in Picardy, eighteen leagues from Arras.

‡ Ham,—a town in Picardy, on the Somme, six leagues from Roye.

try, where they halted for two or three days. During this time, sir Robert Knolles sent parties to a town or castle which commanded the surrounding country, and the marshals, having obtained a parley with the governors, asked, 'How much will you give us in ready money for all this country, if we will not despoil it?' A treaty and composition was entered into with sir Robert, and a large sum of florins paid down. This country was respited from being burnt. Sir Robert gained by this treaty a sum amounting to one hundred thousand francs, for which he was afterwards ill at court, and accused to the king of England for not having done his duty faithfully, as I shall fully relate in the continuance of this history.

The lands of the lord de Coucy were unmolested; and never did the English hurt man or woman, nor take from them a farthing, who said, 'I belong to the lord de Coucy.' They marched unto the good town of Noyon\*, which was well provided with men at arms, and halted in the neighbourhood: they made their approaches very near, to see if it were possible for them to carry it by assault, but found it well fortified, and able to defend itself should there be occasion. Sir Robert was lodged in the abbey of Orcamp†, and his men in the neighbourhood. They advanced one day in order of battle to the walls of the city,

---

\* Noyon,—now a village in Picardy, diocese of Amiens.

† Orcamp, or St. Anne,—a village in Picardy, near Noyon.

to see if the garrison and inhabitants would issue forth, but in vain.

There was a Scots knight in the English army who performed a most gallant deed of arms. He quitted his troop, with his lance in its rest, and mounted on his courser, followed only by his page; when, sticking spurs into his horse, he was soon up the mountain and at the barriers. The name of this knight was sir John Affueton\*, a very valiant and able man, perfectly master of his profession. When he was arrived at the barriers of Noyon, he dismounted, and, giving his horse to his page, said, 'Quit not this place:' then, grasping his spear, he advanced to the barriers, and leaped over them. There were on the inside some good knights of that country, such as sir John de Roye, sir Launcelot de Lorris, and ten or twelve others, who were astonished at this action, and wondered what he would do next: however, they received him well. The Scots knight, addressing them, said; 'Gentlemen, I am come to see you; for, as you do not vouchsafe to come out beyond your barriers, I condescend to visit you. I wish to try my knighthood against yours, and you will conquer me if you can.' After this, he gave many grand strokes with his lance, which they returned him. He continued in this situation alone against them all, skirmishing and fighting most gallantly, upwards of an hour. He wounded one or two of their knights; and

---

\* Sir John Affueton. Probably Seton.

they

they had so much pleasure in this combat, they frequently forgot themselves. The inhabitants looked from above the gate and tops of the walls with wonder. They might have done him much hurt with their arrows, if they had so willed: but no: the French knights had strictly forbidden it. Whilst he was thus engaged, his page came close to the barriers, mounted on his courser, and said to him aloud, in his own language, ‘ My lord, you had better come away: it is time, for our army is on its march.’ The knight, who had heard him, made ready to follow his advice; and, after he had given two or three thrusts to clear his way, he seized his spear, and leaped again over the barriers without any hurt, and, armed as he was, jumped up behind the page on his courser. When he was thus mounted, he said to the French, ‘ Adieu, gentlemen: many thanks to you,’ and, spurring his steed, soon rejoined his companions. This gallant feat of sir John Assueton was highly prized by all manner of persons.



## CHAP. XVII.

THE GARRISON OF NOYON MAKE THE ENGLISH PRISONERS WHO HAD SET FIRE TO PONT L'ÉVÊQUE.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS FOR SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN,

SIR Robert Knolles and his army, on their departure from the town of Noyon, set fire to Pont l'Évêque on the river Oise, where there were several handsome hôtels. Those knights and squires in the town of Noyon were exceedingly angry at this proceeding, and, understanding that sir Robert and his forces had proceeded, left the city of Noyon with about fifty lances, and came so well in time to the town of Pont l'Évêque, that they found there those who had burnt it, and others occupied in the pillage. They were attacked most furiously, and the greater part of them slain or made prisoners. The French took more than sixty horses, and rescued many prisoners whom the enemy intended carrying off. Several good houses would have been burnt if they had not come there so opportunely. They returned to Noyon with upwards of fifteen English prisoners, whom they beheaded.

The English continued their march in battle-array, intending to enter the Laonnois, and to cross

cross the rivers Oise\* and Aine†. They committed no devastation in the county of Soissons, because it belonged to the lord de Coucy. True it is, they were followed and watched by some lords of France, such as the viscount de Meaux, the lord de Chauny, lord Raoul de Coucy, lord William de Melun, son of the count de Tancarville, and their forces; so that the English, not daring to quit their line of march, kept in a compact body. The French did not attack them, but every night took up their quarters in castles or strong towns; whilst the English encamped in the open plains, where they found provision in plenty, and new wine, with which they made very free. Thus did they advance, burning, ravaging, and oppressing all the country, when they crossed the river Marne‡, and entered Champagne, and then passed the Aube§, returning to the country about Provins||; when they several times passed the Seine, and made appearances of marching towards Paris; for they had heard that the king of France had collected a large force of men at arms under the command of the count de St. Pol and the lord de Clifson, with whom they were very

---

\* Oise,—a river in Picardy,—rises in Hainault.

† Aisne or Aine,—a river which rises in Champagne, and joins the Oise a little above Compiègne.

‡ Marne,—a large river which rises near Bassigny.

§ Aube,—a considerable river in Champagne. It rises at Auberive, near Langres.

|| Provins,—an ancient town of Brie, on the Morin, which runs into the Marne, 22 leagues from Paris.

eager to engage, and for that end made every preparation as if they only wished for the combat.

Upon this, the king of France wrote to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, who was in Aquitaine with the duke of Anjou, to order him, as soon as he should have read the letters, to set out for France, as he intended to employ him in another part of his kingdom.

Pope Urban V. came back about this time to Avignon, after having resided nearly four years at Rome. He returned in the hope of making peace between the two kings; for this renewal of war was very displeasing to him. All those of Avignon and the country around it were very happy at the return of the pope, as they thought it would be more advantageous for them.

We will now say how the prince of Wales carried on his affairs.

---

## CHAP. XVIII.

THE PRINCE OF WALES ASSEMBLES HIS ARMY AT COGNAC, WHERE HE MEETS HIS BROTHER THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—THE DUKES OF ANJOU AND BERRY BREAK UP THEIR EXPEDITION, LIMOGES HAVING TURNED TO THE FRENCH.

**Y**OU have before heard of the prince of Wales fixing his rendezvous at Cognac, with the intent of advancing to combat the duke of Anjou,

Anjou, who was burning and despoiling his territories. The barons, knights and squires of Poitou and Saintonge, and all who were vassals to the prince hastened to obey his summons. The earl of Pembroke quitted his garrison, with a hundred lances, and came to meet him.

The duke of Lancaster and his army arrived about this time at Bourdeaux, at which the country rejoiced much. He made not any long stay there; for, hearing that the prince was about to march against his enemies, he departed, and met, one day's march from Cognac, the earl of Pembroke, who was likewise going thither. They were very happy to see each other, and rode together to Cognac, where they found the prince, princess and earl of Cambridge, who were greatly pleased at their arrival. Men at arms daily came in from Poitou, Saintonge, la Rochelle, Bigorre, Gorre, Gascony and the surrounding countries under the obedience of the prince.

The duke of Anjou, the count d'Armagnac, the lord d'Albert, and the counts, viscounts, knights and squires of that army, who, as before has been related, conquered cities, towns and fortresses to the number of more than forty, by merely shewing themselves before them, and who had advanced within fifteen leagues of Bourdeaux, burning and ravaging the country round Bergerac and Linde, hearing that the prince had summoned his forces to meet him at Cognac, and that the duke of Lancaster was arrived with a strong body of men at arms and archers

archers from England, called a council to consider what measures would be now most proper for them to pursue. It was at this time that the king of France had sent back sir Bertrand du Guesclin to the duke of Berry, who was besieging the city of Limoges, and had pressed it so hard that it was upon the point of surrendering, but upon good terms. Sir Bertrand was summoned to attend this council of the duke of Anjou, as was right, and many were the debates at it. At last, after well considering the business, the duke of Anjou was advised, for the present, to break up this expedition, to order his men to different garisons, and to carry on the war from thence, as he had done sufficient in the open field. It was therefore highly behoving the lords of Gascony who were present, such as the Count d'Armagnac, the count de Perigord, the lord d'Albert and others, to retire to their own country to guard and defend it; for they knew not what the prince might be inclined to do with so large an army. They then separated, each going on his own business. The duke of Anjou returned to the city of Cahors: his men and the free companies spread themselves over the country which they had conquered, and quartered themselves in different garisons. The count d'Armagnac and the other lords went to their homes, and amply stored their towns and castles with all sorts of provision and artillery, as if they expected a war: they ordered out their vassals, and trained them to defend their country should need be.

We

We will now speak of sir Bertrand du Guesclin, who, on his departure from the duke of Anjou, marched with his men to the siege of Limoges, where the duke of Berry, the duke of Bourbon and the great knights of France were employed. The French were in high spirits on the arrival of sir Bertrand, and it was a grand piece of news both within as well as without the city. He immediately followed up some treaties which had been before opened between the bishop and citizens with the duke of Berry, and managed that they were concluded by the bishop and citizens turning to the French. The dukes of Berry and Bourbon, sir Guy de Blois and the lords of France entered the town with great state, when they received from the inhabitants their homage and fealty. After they had rested themselves for three days, they followed the same resolutions as had been determined upon in the council held by the duke of Anjou, and each man retired to his own country to guard his towns and castles against sir Robert Knolles, who still kept his ground in France, and also because they had done enough by taking such a city as Limoges. The lords then separated, but sir Bertrand remained in Limousin with two hundred lances, which he posted in the castles of the lord de Maleval, who had turned to the French.

When the duke of Berry left Limoges, he ordered into the city, at the request of the bishop, sir John de Villemur, sir Hugh de la Roche and Roger de Beaufort, with one hundred men at arms

arms. He then retreated to Berry, and the duke of Bourbon to the Bourbonnois. The other lords who had come from distant parts went to their different countries.

We will now return to the prince.

---

---

## CHAP. XIX.

THE PRINCE OF WALES, ANXIOUS TO RECOVER LIMOGES, LAYS SIEGE TO IT, AND UNDERMINES IT.

WHEN intelligence was brought to the prince that the city of Limoges had become French, that the bishop, who had been his companion and one in whom he used to place great confidence, was a party to all the treaties, and had been much aiding and assisting in the surrender, he was in a violent passion, and held the bishop and all other churchmen in very low estimation, in whom formerly he had put great trust. He swore by the soul of his father, which he had never perjured, that he would have it back again, that he would not attend to any thing before he had done this, and that he would make the inhabitants pay dearly for their treachery.

When the greater part of his forces were arrived, he mustered them: they amounted to twelve hundred lances, knights and squires, a thousand archers

archers and a thousand footmen. They marched from the town of Cognac. Sir Thomas Felton and the captal de Buch remained at Bergerac, to guard that frontier against the French and the free companies who were disperfed over that part of the country.

With the prince were, his brothers of Lancafter and Cambridge, fir Guiscard d'Angle, fir Louis de Harcourt, the lords de Pons, de Partenay, de Pinane, de Tannaybouton, fir Percival de Coulonge, fir Geoffry d'Argenton, Poitevins: of Gascons there were, the lords de Montferrant, de Chaumont, de Longueren, fir Aimery de Tharfe, the lords de Pommiers, de Muciden, de l'Esparre, the fouldich de la Trane\*, the lord de Gironde and feveral more: of Englifh there were, lord Thomas Percy, the lord Roos, fir William Beauchamp, fir Michael de la Pole, fir Stephen Coffington, fir Richard de Pontchardon, fir Baldwin de Franville, fir Simon Burley, the earl of Angus, fir John Devereux, fir William Neville, and more whom I cannot name: of Hainaulters, were fir Euface d'Ambreticourt: of the free companies, fir Perducas d'Albret, Naudon de Bagerant, Lanuit, the bourg de l'Esparre, the bourg de Breteuil, Efpiote, Bernard de Wift, and others.

All thefe men at arms were drawn out in battle-array, and took the field, when the whole coun-

---

\* The fouldich de la Trane. See Afhmole, vol. ii. where there is a long account of him, and mention alfo is made of the lords de Montferrant and de l'Esparre.



try began to tremble for the consequences. At that time the prince of Wales was not able to mount his horse, but was, for his greater ease, carried in a litter. They followed the road to the Limoufin, in order to get to Limoges, where in due time they arrived and encamped all round it. The prince swore he would never leave the place until he had regained it.

The bishop of the place and the inhabitants found they had acted too wickedly, and had greatly incensed the prince; for which they were very repentant, but that was now of no avail, as they were not the masters of the town. Sir John de Villemur, sir Hugh de la Roche and Roger de Beaufort, who commanded in it, did all they could to comfort them by saying, 'Gentlemen, do not be alarmed: we are sufficiently strong to hold out against the army of the prince: he cannot take us by assault, nor greatly hurt us, for we are well supplied with artillery.'

When the prince and his marshals had well considered the strength and force of Limoges, and knew the number of gentlemen that were in it, they agreed they could never take it by assault, but said they would attempt it by another manner.

The prince was always accustomed to carry with him, in his expeditions, a large body of miners: these were immediately set to work, and made great progress. The knights who were in the town soon perceived they were undermining them, and on that account began to counter-

countermine to prevent the effect. But we will now leave the prince a little, to return to sir Robert Knolles.

---

CHAP. XX.

SIR ROBERT KNOLLES, IN CONTINUING HIS INCURSIONS THROUGH DIFFERENT PROVINCES OF FRANCE, ADVANCES NEAR TO PARIS.—A KNIGHT OF HIS ARMY, IN RETURNING FROM A VAINGLORIOUS EXPEDITION, IS SLAIN BY A BUTCHER OF PARIS.

**S**IR Robert Knolles, as has been before related, had entered France with a large body of men, and was marching by short stages through that kingdom with a magnificence for which the people and the rich provinces paid dearly. The English, as they advanced and retreated, did infinite mischief, at the same time shewing as if they only wished for a battle.

Having passed through the countries of Artois, Vermandois, the bishoprick of Laon, the archbishoprick of Rheims in Champagne, they returned into Brie, and from thence came near to Paris, and quartered themselves for a day and two nights in the villages around it.

King Charles of France was at that time in the city, and he could see from his palace of St. Pol

the fire and smoke which the enemy were making in the Gâtinois. There were also in the city the constable of France sir Moreau de Fiennes, the count de St. Pol, the count de Tancarville, the count de Saltzburg, the viscount Meaux, sir Raoul de Coucy, the sénéchal of Hainault, sir Odoart de Renti, sir Enguerrand d'Audin, the lord de Château-julien, sir John de Vienne, the lord de la Riviere, and many more great knights and valorous men of France : but not one of them sallied forth, for the king had strictly forbidden them so to do. The lord de Clifson, who was of the king's cabinet council, and more listened to than the rest, said every thing he could to prevent any knight from quitting the town, adding, among other things, ' Sire, why should you employ your men against these madmen ? Let them go about their business. They cannot take your inheritance from you, nor drive you out of it by smoke.'

The count de St. Pol, the viscount de Rohan, sir Raoul de Coucy, the lords de Canin, de Cresques, sir Odoart de Renti and sir Enguerrand d'Audin, were at the barriers of St. James's gate. Now it happened one Tuesday morning, when the English began to decamp, and had set fire to all the villages wherein they were lodged, so that the fires were distinctly seen from Paris, a knight of their army, who had made a vow the preceding day that he would advance as far as the barriers and strike them with his lance, did not break his oath, but set off with his lance in his hand, his target on his neck, and completely armed except his

his helmet, and, spurring his steed, was followed by his squire on another courser carrying the helmet. When he approached Paris, he put on the helmet, which his squire laced behind. He then galloped away, sticking spurs into his horse, and advanced prancing to strike the barriers. They were then open; and the lords and barons within imagined he intended to enter the town, but he did not mean any such thing, for, having struck the gates according to his vow, he checked his horse and turned about. The French knights who saw him thus retreat cried out to him, 'Get away! get away! thou hast well acquitted thyself.' As for the name of this knight, I am ignorant of it, nor do I know from what country he came; but he bore for his arms gules à deux souffes noir, with une bordure noire non endentée.

However, an adventure befel him, from which he had not so fortunate an escape. On his return, he met a butcher on the pavement in the suburbs, a very strong man, who had noticed him as he had passed him, and who had in his hand a very sharp and heavy hatchet with a long handle. As the knight was returning alone, and in a careless manner, the valiant butcher came on one side of him, and gave him such a blow between the shoulders that he fell on his horse's neck: he recovered himself, but the butcher repeated the blow on his head so that the axe entered it. The knight, through excess of pain, fell to the earth; and the horse galloped away to the squire, who was waiting for his master in the fields at the ex-

tremity of the suburbs. The squire caught the courser, but wondered what was become of his master ; for he had seen him gallop to the barriers, strike them, and then turn about to come back. He therefore set out to look for him ; but he had not gone many paces before he saw him in the hands of four fellows, who were beating him as if they were hammering on an anvil : this so much frightened the squire that he dared not advance further, for he saw he could not give him any effectual assistance : he therefore returned as speedily as he could.

Thus was this knight slain : and those lords who were posted at the barriers had him buried in holy ground. The squire returned to the army, and related the misfortune which had befallen his master. All his brother-warriors were greatly angered thereat ; and they marched to take up their quarters for the night, between Montlehery \* and Paris, upon a small river, where they encamped at an early hour in the day.

---

\* Montlehery,—a town in the ile of France, seven leagues from Paris.

## CHAP. XXI.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN TAKES THE FORTRESS OF ST. YRIER IN LIMOUSIN.—THE PRINCE OF WALES RE-CONQUERS LIMOGES.

**D**URING the time sir Robert Knolles was employed in his expedition, and the prince of Wales with his two brothers were at the siege of Limoges, sir Bertrand du Guesclin with his company, amounting to about two hundred lances, marched through a part of Limousin, but did not encamp in the open plain for fear of the English. He retreated every night into some of the strong places which had lately turned to the French : in that number were the castles of sir Louis de Maleval and sir Raymond de Marneil, and several others : from thence he made daily excursions to conquer other towns and castles.

The prince knew well all this ; for he received every day information of what was passing, as well as complaints on the subject ; but he would not break up his siege, for he had too much at heart the loss of Limoges.

Sir Bertrand entered the viscounty of Limoges, a territory which was dependant on lord John de Montfort, duke of Brittany, in the name of the widow of lord Charles de Blois, to whom it had formerly belonged. He made war upon it without any opposition ; for the duke of Brittany did

not imagine Sir Bertrand would carry the war into any part of his property. He came before St. Yrier \*, where there were not any gentlemen that knew how to defend it; and the inhabitants were so frightened, they surrendered themselves under the obedience of the duchess dowager of Brittany, in whose name the war was made. The Bretons formed St. Yrier into a considerable garrison; by which means they took many other towns in Limoufin. But let us return to the prince.

The prince of Wales remained about a month, and not more, before the city of Limoges: he would not allow of any assaults or skirmishing, but kept his miners steadily at work. The knights in the town perceived what they were about, and made countermines to destroy them; but they failed in their attempt. When the miners of the prince (who, as they found themselves countermined, kept changing the line of direction of their own mine) had finished their business, they came to the prince, and said; 'My lord, we are ready and will throw down, whenever you please, a very large part of the the wall into the ditch, through the breach of which you may enter the town at your ease and without danger.'

This news was very agreeable to the prince who replied, 'I wish then that you'd prove your words to-morrow morning at six o'clock.' The miners set fire to the combustibles in the mine and on the morrow morning, as they had foretold

---

\* St. Yrier,—a village in Limoufin, election of Talles.  
the

the prince, they flung down a great piece of wall, which filled the ditches.

The English saw this with pleasure, for they were all armed and prepared to enter the town. Those on foot did so, and ran to the gate, which they destroyed as well as the barriers, for there were no other defences; and all this was done so suddenly that the inhabitants had not time to prevent it.

The prince, the duke of Lancaster, the earls of Cambridge and of Pembroke, sir Guiscard d'Angle and the others, with their men, rushed into the town. You would then have seen pillagers, active to do mischief, running through the town, slaying men, women and children, according to their orders. It was a most melancholy business; for all ranks, ages and sexes cast themselves on their knees before the prince, begging for mercy; but he was so inflamed with passion and revenge that he listened to none, but all were put to the sword, wherever they could be found, even those who were not guilty: for I know not why the poor were not spared, who could not have had any part in this treason; but they suffered for it, and indeed more than those who had been the leaders of the treachery.

There was not that day in the city of Limoges any heart so hardened, or that had any sense of religion, who did not deeply bewail the unfortunate events passing before their eyes; for upwards of three thousand men, women and children were



to death that day. God have mercy on their souls ! for they were veritable martyrs.

A company of English, in entering the town, hastened to the palace of the bishop, whom they there found and took prisoner, carrying him, without any regard to his dignity, to the prince of Wales, who, eyeing him indignantly, told him that his head should be cut off, and ordered him out of his presence.

We will now speak of those knights who were in the town, sir John de Villemur, sir Hugh de la Roche, and Roger de Beaufort, son to the count de Beaufort, governors of the city. When they perceived the tribulation which was overpowering them, they said ; ‘ We shall be all slain for a certainty, if we do not gallantly defend ourselves : let us therefore sell our lives as dearly as good knights ought to do.’ Upon this, sir John de Villemur said to Roger de Beaufort, ‘ You must be knighted.’ Roger replied, ‘ Sir, I have not as yet signalized myself sufficiently for that honour, but I thank you much for your good opinion in suggesting it to me.’ No more was said, for they had not time to hold further conversation.

They collected in a body, and, placing themselves before an old wall, sir John de Villemur and sir Hugh de la Roche displayed their banners, and drew up in good order. They might be, in the whole, about fourscore.

The duke of Lancaster and the earl of Cambridge, with their men, advanced upon them, and dismounted, to be on an equality with the enemy.

They

They attacked them with hearty good will. You may easily imagine that this handful of men could not resist the English, but were all slain or made prisoners.

The duke of Lancaster was engaged for a long time with sir John de Villemur, who was a hardy knight, strong and well made. The earl of Cambridge singled out sir Hugh de la Roche, and the earl of Pembroke Roger de Beaufort, who was but a simple esquire. These three Frenchmen did many valorous deeds of arms, as all allowed, and ill did it betide those who approached too near. The prince, coming that way in his carriage, looked on the combat with great pleasure, and enjoyed it so much that his heart was softened and his anger appeased. After the combat had lasted a considerable time, the Frenchmen, with one accord, viewing their swords, said, 'My lords, we are yours: you have vanquished us: therefore act according to the law of arms.' 'By God,' replied the duke of Lancaster, 'sir John, we do not intend otherwise, and we accept you for our prisoners.' Thus, as I have been informed, were these three knights taken. But the business was not here ended, for the whole town was pillaged, burnt, and totally destroyed. The English then departed, carrying with them their booty and prisoners. They marched to Cognac, where the princess had remained, and there the prince disbanded his forces, not intending to do any thing more that season; for he did not feel himself at his ease, as every exertion aggravated his disorder, which

which was increasing, to the great dismay of his brothers and all those about him.

I must inform you how the bishop of Limoges escaped with imprisonment, who had been in imminent danger of his life. The duke of Lancaster asked him of the prince, who consented, and ordered him to be given up to the duke, for him to do with him according as he willed. The bishop having good friends, they sent information of his situation to the pope, who had lately arrived at Avignon; and fortunate was it for the bishop they did so, otherwise he would have been a dead man. The pope wrote such pressing and kind letters to the duke of Lancaster, to request he would give him the bishop, that he was unwilling to refuse, and sent him to the pope, who felt himself exceedingly obliged for it.

We will now say what was going forward in France.

---

## CHAP. XXII.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN IS MADE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.

THE king of France was informed of the conquest and destruction of Limoges, and how the prince and his army had left it empty and deserted, which vexed him much on account of the

the distress and loss of the late inhabitants. It was therefore thought advisable in a council of nobles and prelates, as well as by the common assent of the whole kingdom, to elect a chief or commander, called a constable (for sir Moreau de Fiennes wished to resign the office) who was a valiant and enterprising man, and one to whom all knights and squires would pay proper deference. After all things had been well considered, they unanimously elected sir Bertrand du Guesclin (provided he would undertake the office), as the most valiant, the best informed, the most virtuous and fortunate in conducting affairs for the crown of France of all those who were bearing arms in its defence.

The king wrote to him by messengers, for him to come to Paris. Those sent found him in the viscounty of Limoges, taking castles and forts, which he put under the obedience of madame de Bretagne, widow of the late lord Charles de Blois. He had lately taken a town called Brantome\*, whose inhabitants had surrendered themselves to him, and was then on an expedition against another.

When the king's messengers came to him, he received them handsomely, as he knew well how to do. They gave him their letter, and delivered their message word for word: When sir Bertrand thus saw himself specially ordered, he was unwilling to make any more excuses for not

---

\* Brantome,—a town in Perigord, diocese of Perigueux.

waiting on the king of France to know his will : he set out as soon as possible, having ordered all his men into the garrisons which he had conquered, and appointed his nephew, sir Oliver de Mauny, commander over them.

He rode on to Paris, where he found the king surrounded by a number of the lords of his council. He was received by all with great pleasure ; and the king told him of his being chosen constable of France. On hearing which, sir Bertrand modestly and sagely excused himself, saying, ‘ he was not worthy of it : that he was but a poor knight and simple bachelor, in comparison with the great lords and valorous men of France, however fortune might have been favourable to him.’ The king replied, ‘ that his excuses would be of no avail ; that he must consent to accept this dignity, for it had been so determined by the decision of the whole of the council of France, and that he would not break through such a resolution.’ Sir Bertrand used other arguments to excuse himself ; adding ‘ Dear lord and noble king, I cannot, I dare not, whatever I may wish, oppose what may be your good pleasure : but in truth I am too poor a man, and of low extraction, for the office of constable, which is so grand and noble that it is proper for those (who wish to exercise it justly and honourably) to command and keep a strict eye more upon the great than the poor. Now Sir, here are my lords your brothers, your nephews and your cousins, who will have different commands in your armies, and in various expeditions ; and how shall  
I dare

I dare to order them? Certainly, my dear lord, envy and jealousy are so much abroad, I ought to be on my guard against them: I therefore entreat you will not insist on my taking this office, but give it to some other who will readily accept of it, and who knows better than I do how to execute it.' The king made answer; 'Sir Bertrand, that excuse will not serve you; for I have neither brother, nephew, cousin, count nor baron in my realm but who will obey your orders; and should any one act otherwise, he would so anger me that he should soon feel the effects of it: I therefore beg of you to accept this office with a good will.'

Sir Bertrand, finding that no excuse nor any thing he could say would be listened to, accepted the king's offer, but it was much against his inclination. He was invested with the office of constable; and the king, to shew him greater affection, made him be seated at his table, and gave him, besides this office, many rich gifts and large domains in land, for him and his heirs: The duke of Anjou was very active in forwarding this promotion.

## CHAP. XXIII.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN AND THE LORD  
DE CLISSON DEFEAT THE FORCES OF SIR  
ROBERT KNOLLES AT PONT-VALIN\*.

SOON after sir Bertrand du Guesclin had been invested with the dignity of constable, he told the king he wished to form an expedition against sir Robert Knolles and his forces, who were at that time on the borders of Maine and Anjou. This was very agreeable to the king, who said to him, 'Take any number of men at arms you please, and whatever else you may think right.'

The constable made every necessary preparation, and collected a large body of men at arms, Bretons and others, and marched towards Maine, taking with him the lord de Clisson. The constable came to the city of Mans, where he fixed his head-quarters, and the lord de Clisson in another town hard by: they might be about five hundred lances.

Sir Robert Knolles and his army were still in that part of the country, but they did not agree very well together; for there was an English knight among them, called sir John Menestre-

---

\* Pont-Valin,—a town in Anjou, election of la Flèche.

worth,

worth\*, who always objected to what others proposed, and said they only wasted their time in these expeditions, and wore down and fatigued the men without doing any thing essential, or making any conquest. This knight, who commanded a large force, and had some able men at arms with him, left the others. Sir Robert Knolles and sir Aleyne Boxhull, however, kept together, and were quartered pretty near to Mans. Sir Thomas Grantson, sir Gilbert Gifford, sir Geoffry Worsley, and sir William Neville, were quartered a good day's march in the rear.

When sir Robert Knolles and sir Aleyne Boxhull heard that the constable of France and the lord de Clifson were come into those parts, they were much rejoiced, and said, ' It will be well for us to collect our forces more together, and post ourselves to our advantage in this country; for sir Bertrand, in the novelty of office, is certainly come to look at us, and he would not have been happy if he had not made this expedition. We have already rode through the realm of France without meeting with any hindrance. Let us inform sir Hugh Calverly (who is at Saumur on the Loire), and sir Robert Cheney, sir Robert Briquet, and the other captains of companies who

---

\* Sir John Menstreworth. Froissart calls him *Maisfreurde*. I have followed Barnes, who adds that he was a traitor, sold to the French, and, having embezzled large sums destined for the pay of the army, was afraid to be called to an account for them.



are near us, of our situation and intentions, who will willingly hasten to join us. We may therefore fall upon this new constable, and the lord de Clifton, who is so much our enemy\*; and we shall make a handsome finish to our campaign.'

Between sir Robert Knolles, sir Aleyne Boxhull, and sir John Seton, there was not any difference of opinion; and they acted always in unison. They immediately sent off messengers secretly to sir Hugh Calverly, sir Robert Briquet, and the others, with letters to inform them how they were situated, and to propose that they should join in an attack upon the French. They signified the same to sir Thomas Grantson, sir Gilbert Gifford, sir Geoffry Worsley and the others, desiring them

---

\* *The lord de Clifton, so much our enemy.* His quarrel with the duke of Brittany and the English, to whom he had always been attached, was caused by the duke's refusal of a request he made for the lordship of Gavre, which was very convenient to him, and near his castle of Blein.

When he asked for it, the duke said he had disposed of it in favour of sir John Chandos, to whom he had essential obligations. Clifton, enraged at this preference, swore he would never have an Englishman for his neighbour, set fire to the house, and had the stones carried to Blein, using them to fortify this castle. He conceived so mortal a hatred to the English that he embraced the party of the countess de Penthièvre, on whom he had before made war, and accepted the lieutenancy of Brittany under her, and the guard of all the places she had there. This change of conduct introduced him to the service of Charles V. who admitted him to his councils, loaded him with gifts, and gave him the lieutenancy general de Touraine.—*Memoires de Bertrand du Guesclin, par Berville*, vol. ii. p. 210, note.

to advance to a place which they pointed out to them, for they were in hopes to engage the French who had come on this expedition. Upon receiving this intelligence, they all made ready with great cheerfulness to join their companies, amounting to about two hundred spears.

This matter, however, was not carried on so secretly but that sir Bertrand and the lord de Clifton got wind of it, and knew also what was intended on the junction of their forces: they therefore armed themselves during the night, and, marching with their men and garrisons, took the field. This same night, sir Thomas Grantson, sir Geoffry Worsley, sir Gilbert Gifford, sir William Neville and the others, had left their quarters, and advanced towards sir Robert Knolles and sir Aleyne Boxhull to a spot where they expected to find them. But their march was shortened; for, directly at a place called Pont-valin, they were met by the French, who immediately charged them, and surrounded them, as they were full four hundred lances and the English about two hundred. The battle was sharp and long, and well fought on both sides. As soon as they met, they dismounted, and attacked each other most valiantly with spears and swords. The French gained the victory over the English, who were all slain or made prisoners; for not an Englishman fled, except some of the pages or servants, who, mounting their masters' couriers, made off as fast as possible when they saw they were defeated. Among the prisoners were, sir Thomas Grantson,

sir Gilbert Gifford, sir Geoffry Worley, sir William Neville, sir Philip Courtenay, sir Hugh Despencer, and many more knights and squires, who were all conducted to the city of Mans.

Intelligence of this was speedily spread over the country, and soon known to sir Robert Knolles, sir Hugh Calverley and the others, who were much vexed thereat, and broke up their intended attack, through this unexpected event. Those at Saumur, as well as in the other quarters, remained quiet. Sir Robert Knolles and sir Aleyn Boxhull made a handsome retreat into Brittany, for they were not far distant. Sir Robert went to his castle of Derval, where he gave orders to all his men at arms and archers to go wherever they might find profit or honour, and several returned to England, whence they had come. Sir Aleyn Boxhull went to pass the winter in his town of St. Sauveur le Vicomte, which the king of England had given to him.

After the defeat of Pont-valin, where a part of the English were slain and the remainder put to the rout, so that the expedition was ruined, sir Bertrand du Guesclin (whose entrance into the office of constable had been thus fortunately signalized, in a way to gain him great honour and reputation) came to Paris, accompanied by the lord de Clifson, and bringing with them the greater part of their prisoners, to whom they behaved very handsomely, allowing them to go at large on their parole for their ransom. They neither shut them up in prison, nor put on shackles and fetters, as  
the

the Germans do in order to obtain a heavier ransom. Curses on them for it. These people are without pity or honour, and they ought never to receive quarter. The French entertained their prisoners well, and ransomed them courteously without being too hard with them.

The prince of Wales, the duke of Lancaster and all the English, who, after the conquest and vengeance taken on Limoges, had retired to Cognac, were much dismayed by the defeat at Pontvalin.

This year, about Christmas, pope Urban V. died at Avignon. He was a learned and wise man, and a good Frenchman. The cardinals assembled in conclave to choose a successor, when they unanimously elected the cardinal de Beaufort, who took the name of pope Gregory XI. The king of France was well pleased with this creation and divine election, for he knew him to be a loyal Frenchman and a prudent man. The duke of Anjou was at Avignon during the conclave, and took much pains that he should be elected pope.

## CHAP. XXIV

SIR EUSTACE D'AMBRETICOURT IS MADE PRISONER AND RANSOMED.—SIR RAYMOND DE MARNEIL, A PARTISAN OF FRANCE, IS TAKEN, AND IN IMMINENT DANGER, BUT SAVED BY HIS KEEPER.

A VERY unfortunate adventure befel sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt much about this time. As he was riding one day through Limousin, he came in the evening to the castle of the lord de Pierre Buffiere, which he entered, thinking him a friend, a brother soldier and a good Englishman. But Pierre Buffiere had given up his castle to Thibaut du Pont, a man at arms from Brittany, and his company. Thibaut seized sir Eustace, who was not any way on his guard, made him his prisoner, and afterward ransomed him for twelve thousand francs, of which he paid down four thousand, and left his son, François d'Ambreticourt, his hostage for the remainder to the duke of Bourbon, who had gone security for him, and had taken great pains to obtain his liberty, because sir Eustace had been very active in obtaining the freedom of the lady his mother, when she had been made prisoner by the free companies at Belleperche. After he had obtained his liberty, sir Eustace went and resided in Carentan, beyond the fords of St. Clement in lower Normandy, a very handsome town which  
the

the king of Navarre had given him, and where he died. God have mercy on his soul! for whilst he lived and remained in the world he was a most valiant knight.

Nearly at this period, sir Raymond de Marneil, who had changed his party from the English to the French, was returning to his own country from Paris, when he met with a disagreeable accident. On his road, he encountered a body of English, belonging to the forces of sir Hugh Calverley, commanded by a knight of Poitou, and came so suddenly among them that he could not escape: he was thus taken, and carried prisoner to the castle of the knight in Poitou. The capture of sir Raymond was known in England, and came to the king's knowledge, who immediately wrote to the knight, ordering him to send that enemy and traitor sir Raymond de Marneil directly to England, on whom he would wreak such vengeance that it should serve as an example to all others; and that he would pay him six thousand francs for his ransom. Sir Geoffry d'Argenton, who had taken sir Raymond, was not willing to disobey the orders of his sovereign and lord, and replied he would punctually follow his commands.

Sir Raymond de Marneil was informed that the king of England wished to have his person, and had sent orders to that effect; and also that sir Geoffrey was determined to obey them. He was therefore more alarmed than ever, and not without reason. He began to utter in his prison the most piteous moans, insomuch that the person who

guarded him, and was an Englishman, began to compassionate him and gently to sooth him.

Sir Raymond, who saw no rays of comfort in his distress, since he was to be sent to England, at last opened his mind to his keeper. 'My friend,' said he, 'if you will engage to deliver me from the peril in which I am, I will promise and swear on my loyalty to divide half and half with you all my landed possessions, which you shall have for your inheritance; and never as long as I live will I be wanting to you in whatever manner you may please.' The Englishman, who was poor, considered that sir Raymond was in danger of his life, and as he had promised him such a handsome recompense to save it, he took compassion on him, and said he would do all he could to serve him. Sir Raymond heard this with great joy, and swore upon his honour to perform strictly what he had promised, and even more if he insisted upon it. Upon which they consulted how they could best bring this business to a happy end.

When night came, the Englishman, who kept the keys of the tower of the castle where sir Raymond lay, opened his prison and a postern-gate, from whence they issued into the plain, and made for a wood, to prevent themselves being overtaken. They were in greater distress all the night than can be imagined; for they marched seven leagues on foot, and it had frozen so hard, that their feet were all cut and torn. At last, however, at the dawn they came to a French Fortrefs, where they were heartily received by the companions who guarded it.

it. Sir Raymond related to them his adventures, and they all returned thanks to God for his fortunate escape. In truth, when the knight on the morrow found they had gone off, he sent horsemen every where round the country in search of them, but in vain.

In this manner did sir Raymond de Marneil escape from such imminent danger: He returned to Limoufin, and told all his friends his great obligations to the English squire. The Englishman was much honoured by them, and sir Raymond wanted to divide his estate with him; but he refused to accept so much, and would only take two hundred livres a-year, adding that was fully sufficient for the support of himself in his situation.

---

## CHAP. XXV.

THE PRINCE OF WALES, HAVING LOST BY DEATH HIS ELDEST SON, GIVES UP THE DUCHY OF AQUITAINE TO THE CARE OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—FOUR KNIGHTS OF BRITTANY TAKE THE CASTLE OF MONT-PAON\*.

**A**T this time, the eldest son of the prince and princess of Wales died in the city of Bourdeaux. They were exceedingly grieved at this

---

\* Mont-paon,—a village of Rouergue, election of Milhaud.



event, and not without reason. The prince was advised to return to England, as perhaps he might there recover his health; and, as this advice was given him by his physicians and surgeons, he agreed to it. Preparations were made for his departure; and, I believe, the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke were ordered to return with him to bear him company.

When the prince was about to leave Aquitaine, and his vessel was in the harbour of Bourdeaux, on the river Garonne, where he had arrived with the princess and the young Richard, his son, he issued from the city of Bourdeaux a special summons to all the barons and knights of Gascony and Poitou, and to all others over whom he was lord or who depended on him. When they were arrived, and assembled before him in his hall of audience, he addressed them by saying, ‘ that during the time he had been their prince, he had always maintained them in peace, prosperity and power, as far as depended on him, against all their enemies; but that now, in the hope of recovering his health, of which he had great need, he intended to return to England: he therefore besought them earnestly to put their faith in, and to serve and obey his brother, the duke of Lancaster, as they had before served and obeyed him: that they would find him a good and courteous lord, and he begged of them to aid and assist him in all his affairs.’

The barons of Aquitaine, Gascony, Poitou and Saintonge assented to his request, and swore upon their faith and loyalty never to desert him. They  
per-

performed fealty and homage to the duke, declaring themselves willing to pay him all affection, service and obedience. This they swore in the prince's presence, and they all kissed him on the mouth\*. After these affairs were settled, the prince did not tarry long in Bourdeaux, but embarked on board his vessel with the princess and his son, accompanied by the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke. There were in this fleet five hundred combatants, besides archers. They had favourable weather, and, meeting with no accident, arrived safely at Southampton. They were disembarked; and, after having refreshed themselves for two days, all mounted their horses, and took the road for Windsor, except the prince, who was carried in his litter. On their arrival, they found the king, who was then there. He received his children very kindly, and made many enquiries into the state of Guienne. After the prince had made some stay with the king, he took his leave, and retired to his manor of Berkhamstead, twenty miles from the city of London.

We will for the present leave the prince, and say what had passed in Aquitaine.

Soon after the departure of the prince from Bourdeaux, the duke of Lancaster ordered preparations for the funeral of his nephew Edward. It

---

\* *All kissed him on the mouth.* Homage de bouche et des mains is done by a vassal with head uncovered, hands joined and a kiss received, which binds him to fight for his lord only in defence of the lands whereof he holds.—COTGRAVE.

was very grand and magnificent, and was attended by all the barons of Gascony and Poitou\*.

Whilst all these things were going forward, and the funeral occupied every one's attention, and detained the Barons in Bourdeaux, there issued forth from the garrison of Perigord upwards of two hundred lances of Bretons, whom the duke of Anjou had sent and posted there. They were commanded by four valiant and hardy knights, whose names were, sir William de Longueval, sir Alain de la Houffaye, sir Louis de Mailly and the lord d'Arcy. These knights marched with their men to a handsome and strong castle called Mont-paon, of which a knight was lord. When these Bretons arrived, and had advanced up to the barriers, they manœuvred as if they intended an immediate assault, and completely surrounded it. Upon which sir William de Mont-paon, proving he had more of French courage than English, turned to them, and in short surrendered. He gave admittance to these knights and their companions into his castle, of which they took possession, and said they would defend it against all the world. They repaired and added to it whatever might have been wanting.

Intelligence of this was soon carried to Bourdeaux, when the duke of Lancaster told the barons

\* He was buried in the Augustine Friars, London.

\* Here was interred the bodie of Edward, the eldest sonne of Edward the black prince, by Joan his wife, surnamed The Faire Maide of Kent, who was born at Angouleme anno 1375, and died at seven years of age.—*Weever's Funeral Monuments.*

they

they were inactive, for that the Bretons had made an incurſion, and had taken Mont-paon, which was cloſe to their borders. Indeed, when the duke and barons firſt heard of this, they were much aſhamed, and made immediate preparations for marching towards that part; they ſet out from the city of Bourdeaux on a Wednesday after dinner.

With the duke of Lancaſter there were, the lords de Pons and de Partenay, ſir Louis de Harcourt, ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, ſir Percival de Coulongne, ſir Geoffry d'Argenton, ſir James de Surgeres, ſir Maubrun de Linieres, ſir William de Montendre, ſir Hugh de Vinoye, the lord de Crupenac, and many more knights and barons of Poitou and Sain-tonge. From Gaſcony were, the captal de Buch, the lord de Pommiers, ſir Helie de Pommiers, the lords de Chaumont, de Montferrant, de Langeron, the ſouldich de la Trane; ſir Bernardet de l'Abret, the lord de Gironde, ſir Aimery de Teſtu, and ſeveral others. Of the Engliſh were, ſir Thomas Felton, lord Thomas Percy, the lord Roos, ſir Michael de la Pole, the lord Willoughby, ſir William Beauchamp, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, ſir Baldwin de Franville, the earl of Angus and many more. They were in all rather more than ſeven hundred ſpears and five hundred archers. They marched in good order to Mont-paon, where on their arrival ſir William de Montpaon, ſeeing the duke of Lancaſter and his army come to beſiege him, felt very uneaſy; for he knew that, if he were taken, he ſhould die a diſgraceful death, without hopes of mercy, as he had done too much  
againſt

against him to expect any. He told his fears to the four knights, and said he should make his escape and go to Perigord; but that they were masters of his castle to do as they pleased with it. Upon this he directly departed, and went to the city of Perigord, which was very strong, and left his castle under the guard of these four knights.

---

## CHAP. XXVI.

THE FOUR KNIGHTS DEFEND THEMSELVES  
AGAINST THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.—THE  
DUKE, ON TAKING THE PLACE, ADMITS  
THEM TO RANSOM.

**W**HEN the duke of Lancaster was arrived at Mont-paon, with all his barons, knights and men at arms, he immediately laid siege to it. They built themselves substantial huts all round the castle, as if they were to remain there seven years. They were not, however, idle, but began the assault with great vigour, and had large quantities of wood and faggots cut down by the peasants, and carried to the ditches, which they threw in and covered with large beams and earth; by which means they were so filled up that they could advance to the walls to skirmish with the garrison, as was daily done, and there were many gallant conflicts.

The

The four breton knights in the castle were right good men at arms, and fought and defended themselves so valorously, that they were deserving of great praise. They were not dismayed, however near the English or Gascons might advance, and never suffered them to return conquerors.

Not far distant, in the garrison of St. Macaire\*, which belonged to the Bretons, were John de Malestroit and Silvestre Budes, the governors of it, who, hearing every day of the great feats of arms which were doing before Mont-paon, were anxious to be partakers of them. They conversed frequently on this subject, saying, 'Since we know that our companions are so ear to us, and those valiant men,' as such a one and such a one, naming them, 'have daily five or six attacks on their hands, and are continually fighting, whilst we remain here doing of nothing, we certainly do not act well.' They were very eager to go and assist them; but, when they and their companions had all spoken, they began to consider the danger there might be, if they should leave the garrison without one of the commanders, and this puzzled them how to act. Silvestre Budes said, 'By God, I will go.' 'Silvestre,' replied John, 'you shall stay, and I will go.' This dispute continued some time. At last they agreed on their oaths, before all their companions, to draw straws, and that he who had the longest straw should go, and the other re-

---

\* St. Macaire,—A city of Guienne, on the Garonne, nine leagues from Bourdeaux.

main. Upon which they drew straws, and Silvestre Budes had the longest, which created a great laugh among the company.

Silvestre did not take it for a joke, but went and made himself ready; when, mounting his horse, he set off with eleven men at arms, and rode for the castle of Mont-paon, where he arrived and entered in the evening. The knights and garrison were much rejoiced at seeing him, for they had a high opinion of his courage.

As I have before said, there were continued attacks every day made on Mont-paon; and the knights within defended themselves so well that they acquired great honour, for until a large piece of the wall had been thrown down, they were not any way dismayed.

The English had brought thither large machines and other engines of assault, which they could now place near to the walls where the ditches were filled up. There were also footmen covered with large shields, who worked with pick-axes, and laboured so earnestly that one afternoon they flung down upwards of forty feet of the wall. The lords of the army directly ordered out a body of archers, who kept up so well-directed and sharp an attack with their arrows that none could stand against them, nor even show themselves.

Upon this, sir William de Longueval, sir Alain de la Houffaye, sir Louis de Mailly and the lord d'Arcy, finding from this situation that they could not any longer hold out, sent one of their heralds mounted on horseback, through the breach, to speak

ſpeak with the duke of Lancaſter; for they wiſhed, if poſſible, to enter into a treaty. The herald advanced to the duke, way being made for him, and explained the buſineſs on which he was ſent. The duke, by the advice of thoſe about him, granted an armiſtice to the gariſon during the time of a parley; and the herald returned with this answer to his maſters. The four knights directly came forward upon the ditch, and the duke ſent ſir Guiſcard d'Angle to hold a parley with them.

Upon the ditch, therefore, they entered on a treaty, by aſking, ‘ In what fort or manner does the duke intend to make us priſoners?’ Sir Guiſcard, who had received his inſtructions, replied; ‘ Gentlemen, you have greatly diſpleaſed my lord; for you have detained him here ſeveral weeks\*, which has fretted him very much, and cauſed the loſs of ſeveral of his men: for which reaſons, he will not receive you, nor grant you mercy, but will have you ſurrender yourſelves ſimply to him. He alſo inſiſts on ſir William de Mont-paon being firſt given up, for him to be dealt with according to his deſerts as a traitor.’

Sir Louis de Mailly replied; ‘ Sir Guiſcard, in regard to ſir William de Mont-paon, whom you require from us, we ſwear truly and loyally that

---

\* *Several weeks.* All my copies differ as to the number of weeks: ſome eleven, ſome fix weeks: I have therefore ſaid ſeveral weeks, as it appears very uncertain: but I ſhould rather incline to the ſmaller number.



we are ignorant what is become of him, for he did not remain in this town a moment after you had begun to besiege it. But it will be very hard for us to surrender ourselves in the manner you insist on, who are soldiers sent here for pay, just as your commanders may send you, or you may be obliged to it by personal service; and, before we accept of such a bargain, we will sell our lives so dearly that report shall speak of it a hundred years hence. Return, therefore, to the duke of Lancaster, and tell him to accept of us in a courteous manner, upon certain terms of ransom, as he would wish should be done to any of his own party, should they happen to be so unfortunate.'

Sir Guiscard answered, that he would very willingly do so to the utmost of his power. With these words, he returned to the duke, and took with him the capital de Buch, the lords de Rose and de Mucident, the better to forward the business. When these lords were come into the duke's presence, they remonstrated with him so eloquently, and with such good success, that he granted their request, and received the four knights, with Silvestre Budes, and their men, in mercy as prisoners.

Thus had he once more possession of the castle of Mont-paon, and received the homage of the inhabitants of the town. He placed there two Gascon knights as governors, with forty men at arms and as many archers, and had all the wall completely

Completely repaired by masons in the neighbourhood: he victualled the place, and supplied it well with all sorts of artillery.

---

## CHAP XXVII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER DISBANDS HIS ARMY,  
AND RETURNS TO BOURDEAUX.—THE LORD DE  
PONS TURNS TO THE FRENCH PARTY.

**A**FTER the conquest of Mont-paon, when the duke of Lancaster had reinforced it with good men at arms and captains, he broke up his camp, and disbanded his army. Each therefore went to his own home, and the duke returned to Bourdeaux. The Poitevins retreated to their country, and the Gascons to their towns and castles; but the free companies dispersed themselves over the whole principality, where they did as much mischief to friends as enemies. The duke winked at this, and suffered them to act as they pleased, because he thought he might soon have a fresh occasion for their services; more especially as the war at that moment was much more oppressive in Poitou, without comparison, than any where else.

The French kept a large garrison in the castle of Montcontour, four leagues distant from Thouars, and six from Poitiers, which was commanded by sir Peter de Guerille and Jourdain de Coulongne. They daily harassed the country, either about Thouars or about Poitiers, and greatly damaged

maged and pillaged the inhabitants. On the other side, Carnet le Breton held Chatelheraut, with seven hundred Bretons, who much ruined the country. The garrisons from la Roche-posay and St. Salvin were out almost every day, so that the barons and knights of Poitou attached to the English dared not venture abroad but in large parties, for fear of the French who had thus forced themselves into their country.

Soon after the return from Mont-paon, and when the lords of Poitou had retired to their own country, which was one of the frontiers to France, many secret negotiations were set on foot by the lord Louis de St. Julien, the viscount de la Rocheschouart, and several others in the French interest, who, with large sums received from the king of France, laboured day and night, to gain over the lords of Poitou to his party. These negotiations were so successful that the lord de Pons turned to the French, in spite of the entreaties of the lady, his wife, and of all the inhabitants of the town of Pons in Poitou. Notwithstanding, however, the lord de Pons changed his side, the lady remained attached to the English. All the barons and knights in Poitou in the English interest were violently enraged, for the lord de Pons was a powerful baron.

The duke of Lancaster was much grieved at this, and, wishing every curse to attend the lord, felt himself obliged to the lady and to those of the town who had not deserted him. Sir Aimemon de Bours, a good and valiant knight, was ordered to assist the lady with his advice and courage; for the  
lord

lord de Pons advanced every day to the gates of the town, doing no damage to any one; but sometimes he was driven back, and retreated with loss.

---

## CHAP. XXVIII.

### THE ENGLISH TAKE THE CASTLE OF MONT- CONTOUR.

THUS were the English affairs in Poitou entangled; the lords and knights opposed to each other; when the strong oppressed the weak, and none received either law, justice or right. The castles and strong places were intermixed; some being French, others English, who each made excursions on the other, and pillaged on all sides without mercy.

Some of the barons and knights of Poitou of the English party, having considered that the garrison of Montcontour was more active in harassing the country than the others, resolved to march thither and lay siege to it. They therefore issued a summons from the city of Poitiers in the name of lord Thomas Percy, sénéchal of Poitou, which was obeyed by all knights and squires. They amounted to five hundred spears and full two thousand footmen, with large shields, among the archers who accompanied them. There were sir Guis-

card d'Angle, fir Louis d'Harcourt, the lords de Partenay, de Pinane, de Tannaybouton, du Cuyegnac, fir Percival de Coulongne\*, fir Geoffry d'Argenton, fir Hugh de Vinoye, the lord de Coyes, the lord de Puiffances, fir James de Surgeres, fir Maubrun de Linieres and feveral more. There were alfo fome Englifh, who at the time were refident in Poitou, either from the offices they held there, or to affift in guarding the country ; fuch as fir Baldwin de Franville, the earl of Angus, fir Walter Hewett, fir Richard de Pontchardon and others.

When they had been mustered at Poitiers, and had completed their preparations, they marched from thence, taking the road for Montcontour, in full array, with every thing neceffary for the fiege of that place.

The caftle of Montcontour is fituated in the country of Anjou, is very ftrong and handsome, and four leagues diftant from Thouars. The Poitevins, to the amount of three thoufand combatants, continued their march until they arrived there, when they laid fiege to it, and invefted it on all fides. There had been brought from Thouars and Poitiers large engines, which they pointed againft the caftle, and flung from them ftones night and day. They made daily affaults, and the lords frequently had skirmifhes with the garrifon, in which feveral gallant actions were per-

---

\* Sir Percival de Coulongne. Barnes calls him fir Percival Collins.

formed ;

formed: there were with the Poitevins several of the free companies, who were unwilling to remain during the siege; such as John Creswell and David Hollegrave: these two, with sir Walter Hewett, were their leaders.

Sir Peter de Guerfille\* and Jourdain de Coulongne, who were in the castle, defended it valiantly, and advanced every day to the combat with the English at their barriers. On the tenth day after their arrival, in the midst of these attacks, the English and Poitevins assaulted it so briskly, and in such good order and strength, that they broke down the walls of the castle, through which they passed, and conquered the French. All within were slain, except sir Peter and Jourdain, and five or six men at arms, to whom the companions granted quarter.

After the capture of Montcontour, lord Thomas Percy†, sir Louis de Harcourt and sir Guiscard d'Angle, by the advice and consent of the other barons and knights, gave the castle to sir Walter

\* In the hist. de Bretagne, he is called Pierre de la Grefille.

† Lord Thomas Percy—was knight of the Garter.—*Anglic MS. Collections.*

\* He was brother to the first earl of Northumberland, and uncle to Hotspur who was created earl of Worcester by Richard II. His barony was that of Haverfordwest, and he had a considerable estate in South Wales, now in the possession of the duke of Rutland.\* Note in the above Collections, by Dr. Percy, bishop of Downmore.

This estate is, I believe, sold: at least a rent resolute was sold by the duke (lieutenant of Ireland) to Mr. John Manners.

Hewett, John Crefswell and David Hollegrave and their companies, who were full five hundred combatants, for them to guard the frontiers against Anjou and Maine. The lords then marched away, and dismissed their army. Thus was this castle made a guard for the borders by those to whom it had been given, who collected a numerous garrison, and had it completely repaired. They maintained possession of it for a very long time, and much harassed all the country about it; for there was not a day but they made some excursions into Anjou or Maine.

---

## CHAP. XXIX.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN, CONSTABLE OF FRANCE, BESIEGES THE TOWN OF UZES,\* WHICH SURRENDERS TO HIM UPON CAPITULATION.

WE will now return to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, constable of France, who had remained at Paris, near the king, since the defeat of Pontvalin, where he and sir Oliver de Clifton had so

---

\* Uzès. I am inclined to believe it must be Usson, a town in Auvergne, instead of Uzès, which is in Lower Languedoc, eight leagues from Avignon. See Hist. de Bretagne, vol. i. p. 336.

dreadfully

dradfully beaten the English, as has been before related. It was told him that the English still kept the field in Poitou and Guienne : upon which he declared his intentions, that soon after Candlemas, at the commencement of spring, he should collect a very large force of men at arms and noblemen, and would make an incursion to another part of the country, since the English were thus employed in Quercy, Poitou and Rouergue.

Some of the English had very honourably remained in these countries, and had maintained themselves there since the renewal of the war. Sir John Devereux and his men had again got possession of Limousin, and had taken in Auvergne a castle with its dependencies, called Uzes, which the constable said was not to be suffered, and that he was determined to march thither. With the king's permission, he assembled a large body of men at arms ; and, quitting Paris, his army increased daily until he arrived in Auvergne.

There came with him, under his command, the duke of Berry, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the count du Perche his brother, the count de St. Pol, the dauphin of Auvergne, the counts de Vendôme and de Porcien, the lords de Sully and de Montagu, sir Hugh Dauphin, the lord de Beaujeu, the lords de Rochefort and de Talençon, and a great many more barons and knights of France.

This army continued its march until it came before the city of Uzes, when they encamped ; and, after remaining there fifteen days, during



which time many fierce assaults were made, but without impression on the fortress, for it had an English garrison who very valiantly defended it, they broke up the siege and departed, the constable continuing his march into Rouergue. Some of the principal lords took this opportunity of going to Avignon to visit pope Gregory and the duke of Anjou, who at that time was with him. Soon after this visit, and having had a conference with the duke, they left the city of Avignon and followed the constable, who was advancing through Rouergue, taking towns and castles from the English. They came before the town of Milhaud\*, which was held by Sir Thomas Wake†, and had been so for some time: they laid siege to it, as well as to the rock of Vauclerc; but the English knight surrendered upon terms, to sir Bertrand, this as well as some other castles on the borders of Limousin.

When sir Bertrand had refreshed his army, he marched away, taking the road on his return to the city of Uzès, to which he again laid siege. The constable and the dukes of Berry and Bourbon had ordered large machines to be brought from Rioms and Clermont, which they had pointed, as well as other warlike engines, against the walls of the castle.

---

\* Milhaud,—a town in Rouergue, on the Tarn.

† Sir Thomas Wake. In all the editions, printed and MSS. which I have seen, this name is strangely disfigured. I have followed Barnes, for I could not make any thing of *Vaulque-faire* or *Bucilcafare*.

The English, who had before so gallantly defended the place, seeing the great preparations which were making against them, as well as the numerous army of the besiegers, and having heard the manner in which sir Thomas Wake had given up the strong places in Rouergue, at the same time not expecting any succours to come to their assistance, held a council, and resolved to surrender upon capitulation, but not upon any other terms. They entered into a treaty with the constable, which was so well conducted on all sides, that they were to march out without danger or blame, carrying off whatever they could take with them, and besides were to be escorted as far as St. Severe in Limousin. This treaty was strictly observed, and the English marched out, having surrendered whatever they had held in the town and castle of Uzes, and were conducted without peril to the garrison they had fixed upon. Sir Bertrand gained by this expedition a very large extent of country, of which the English had had possession, and then returned to France.

## CHAP. XXX.

THE KING OF ENGLAND'S ANGER AGAINST SIR  
ROBERT KNOLLES IS APPEASED.—PEACE IS  
MADE BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND FLEMINGS.

**Y**OU have before heard of the expedition which  
sir Robert Knolles\* commanded in France,  
and how afterwards he retired to his castle of  
Derval in Brittany. In truth, some of the English,  
on

---

\* Sir Robert Knolles—was but of mean parentage in the  
county of Chester, but by his valour advanced from a common  
soldier, in the French wars under Edward III. to a great com-  
mander. Being sent general of an army into France, in de-  
spite of their power, he drove the people before him like  
sheep, destroying towns, castles and cities in such a manner  
and number that long after, in memory of this act, the sharp  
points and gable ends of overthrown houses and minsters were  
called Knolles' Mitres. After which, to make himself as well  
beloved of his country, he built a goodly fair bridge at Ro-  
chester, over the Medway, with a chapel and chauntry at the  
east end thereof. He built much at the Grayfriars, London,  
and an hospital at Rome for English travellers and pilgrims.  
He deceased at his manor of Scone Thorpe in Norfolk,—was  
buried by the lady Constance, his wife, in the church of Gray-  
friars, London, 15th August 1407.—*Weever's Fun. Mon.*  
p. 436.

In 1365, John de Montfort, duke of Brittany, gave him,  
at the assembly of the states at Vannes, the lands, castle, &c.  
of Derval and Rougé, which had been excepted at the treaty  
of peace.—*Hist. de Bretagne.*

He

on their return home, spoke much against him, so that the king and his council had information of it, and were highly displeased with him. When sir Robert heard of this, he sent over his two principal squires to explain every thing, and to clear him of whatever might be said against him; in so much that the king and his council were satisfied they had been wrongly informed, and thought as favourably of him as before. Sir Aleyne Boxhull, and other knights who were favourites with the king, assisted in his disculpation, and made sir John Menstreworth pay dearly for what he had done: he was taken, and publicly executed in the city of

---

He was created a knight of the Garter, Richard II. and is the 74th knight.

Knolles, earl of Banbury, took his descent from sir Robert Knolles.—*Dugdale's Baronage*.

Lobineau says, Derval, &c. was given to him and his descendants. In 1373, the duke, going into England, left his government to sir Robert Knolles; but few lords obeyed him. The French besieged his castle of Derval, which he had left in the custody of Hugh Broc his kinsman, who capitulated to surrender if not relieved in two months, during which time no person was to be received there. But Knolles disavowed the act of his nephew, alledging he could not treat without his consent; so that the duke of Anjou sent his herald to say, that having done contrary to his capitulation in admitting Knolles, in case he did not surrender, he would put to death the two knights and a squire who were the hostages; which being done, Knolles immediately executed three French knights and a squire, and threw their bodies into the ditch; whereupon the siege was raised.—*Lobineau*, p. 409.

London

London\*. By this act of justice sir Robert Knolles was cleared of all the charges which had been laid against him, and remained in the good graces of the king and prince.

The king of England, who found himself hard pressed by this war with France, gained as many friends as he could on the other side of the sea. He had for allies the duke of Guelders, his nephew, and the duke of Juliers, who had engaged to raise a large force, as they were well able to do, and to make an incursion into France. At this time, the king sent the earl of Hereford† and some other knights of his household, handsomely equipped, to Brittany, to consult with the duke on the arrangements which it was necessary should be made between them.

The English and Flemings were not at this time on good terms, but attacked each other whenever they met on the seas; and so much had the Flemings lost that they were exceedingly angry. By accident, a fleet of each nation met off the island of

\* His head was affixed to a pole on London Bridge, which, on the rebellion of Jack Straw, &c. was taken down to make room for the head of the bishop of London.—*Leland's Collectanea*, vol. iii.

† Earl of Hereford.—Humphry Bohun, constable of England, 32d knight of the Garter. See Dugdale.

It appears however, from Rymer, that sir Robert de Neville and Raulyn de Barey, ecuyer de sa chambre, were the ambassadors from Edward.

Bas in Brittany\*. The commander of the Flemings was John Peterfon, and of the English fir Guy Brian†. As soon as they saw each other, they prepared for action, which was immediately begun; and very sharp it was. The king's knights who accompanied the earl of Hereford, fir Richard Sturey‡, fir Thomas Vuisque and the others were in this engagement.

These knights and their men fought very valiantly against the Flemings, and exerted themselves the more because the enemy were in greater numbers, and were better prepared for action, as, during the whole summer, they had been wishing to meet the English. However, this time they did not gain much by the meeting. This sea-

\* The island of Bas is on the coast of Brittany, near Morlaix. In the original, it is, the two fleets met in a harbour of Brittany, 'qu'on dit à la Baye:' and Carte says in 'the bay:' but I should rather suppose it was meant as I have translated it. This signal victory is very little noticed by our historians.

† Sir Guy Brian—was 57th knight of the Garter, in the stall of fir John Chandos. He was third husband to Elizabeth, dowager of William earl of Salisbury—died 14th Richard II. He was brother to the bishop of Ely.

Pat. 35. Ed. III. p. I. Guidoni de Bryan 200 marcos in pro vita quod prudenter deferebat vexillum regis, in quodam conflictu apud Cales.—*Anstis MS. Collect.*

He is buried at Tewksbury. In Gough's Sepulchral Monuments is a plate of his tomb.

‡ Sir Richard Sturey. I cannot find any thing of him but in the first volume of Leland's Collectanea, p. 183, date 1375. Ricardus Sturey revocatus in familiaritatem, et gratiam ab Edwardo rege.

fight

fight lasted full three hours: many gallant acts were performed, and many were killed and wounded by the arrows. The ships were grappled together with chains and hooks, so that they could not escape. In the end, the victory remained with the English; for the Flemings were discomfited, and John Peterfon, their captain, made prisoner: the rest were either taken or slain, for none escaped.

The English made sail for England with their prizes and prisoners, which prevented them from continuing their voyage to Brittany.

The king was much rejoiced at the success of this engagement, and defeat of the Flemings, especially when he learnt that they were the aggressors.

John Peterfon and his captains were put into close confinement, and the others dispersed in various parts of England.

After this defeat off the isle of Bas, the king of England ordered a large armament to be prepared against the Flemings, to engage the enemy wherever they should meet with them, and to blockade their ports, so that no vessel could sail from them without risk of being taken.

When the citizens of Bruges, Ypres, and Ghent, heard of these orders, they summoned a council, and, after mature deliberation, resolved that it was not for their advantage to be at war or to have any ill-will with the English, who were their neighbours and connected with them by commerce, on account of any quarrel of their earl, nor would it be expedient for them to aid and support him. The principal towns, therefore, dissembled, but sent

sent able and good men to negociate with the king of England and his council, who managed the affair so well that on their return they brought peace to the country of Flanders and to the Flemings, conformable to certain articles in the treaty which was sealed by each party. Thus was this business settled on a good and solid foundation.

We will now say something of the king of Majorca.

---

## CHAP XXXI.

THE KING OF MAJORCA IS RANSOMED FROM KING HENRY OF SPAIN.—HE MAKES WAR ON THE KING OF ARRAGON.

**Y**OU have before heard how James, king of Majorca, was taken at Valladolid, when king Henry re-conquered Spain, and that he continued prisoner to king Henry. When the queen of Naples, his wife, and the marchioness of Montferrat, his sister, heard this, they were much distressed, and immediately began to think of remedying it in the manner I shall mention. They sent trusty men to king Henry to treat for his ransom, who brought the matter about on consideration of the sum of one hundred thousand francs, which those ladies so graciously paid that king Henry was obliged to them.

The



The moment the king of Majorca gained his liberty, he set out for Naples, but remained there only sufficient time to collect large sums of money and a body of troops, with which he again set off to make war on the king of Arragon his adversary, whom he could never love, as he had slain his father and detained his inheritance. The king continued his journey until he came to Avignon, to visit pope Gregory XI. where he staid upwards of a month. He made such able remonstrances with the holy father that he listened to his entreaties, and consented to the war which he was desirous of making on the king of Arragon, as the cause which urged him to it was the recovery of his heritage.

The king of Majorca engaged men at arms at a very high price wherever he could meet with them; English, Gascons, Germans, Bretons, and some of the free companions, under the command of sir Gracien du Châtel, John de Malestroix, Sylvestre Budes, and James Bray. They might amount to about twelve hundred fighting men, who marched with him, and entered Navarre, and there remained with the consent of that king. From thence they advanced into Arragon, where the knights and men at arms made war on the king, over-ran his country, taking and destroying small forts and ransoming its inhabitants.

The king of Arragon, expecting this war, sent some men at arms towards the frontiers of his kingdom, under the command of the count de Roquebertin and the count de Rodais.

Whilst

Whilst this war was carried on, which was done with much inveteracy and cruelty, the king of Majorca fell sick again at Val di Soria, and the disorder increased so much that he there died. By this means, the Arragonians had peace for a long time from that quarter. The free companions who had been engaged in this war returned to France, to that party from whom they thought they should gain most.

We will now speak of the duke of Lancaster.

---

## CHAP. XXXII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER ESPOUSES THE ELDEST DAUGHTER OF THE LATE DON PEDRO, KING OF SPAIN.—TREATIES OF ALLIANCE ARE ENTERED INTO BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND SPAIN.

**D**UKE John of Lancaster remained in the city of Bourdeaux, and with him many knights, barons, and squires of Aquitaine; for, notwithstanding some barons of Poitou and Limousin had turned to the French party, that of the English was in a tolerably good state, and made frequent inroads upon the French, on which occasions they lost nothing, but well scoured the country of those who were defending the frontiers for the duke of Anjou.

The duke of Lancaſter was a widower ſince the death of the lady Blanche, duchefs of Lancaſter and Derby: upon which the barons of Gaſcony, in concert with ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, conſidered that don Pedro, king of Spain, had left two daughters by his marriage with the ſiſter of the king of Portugal, who were then in the city of Bayonne, whither they had been conducted, under the ſafe-guard of ſome knights, by ſea, from the neighbourhood of Seville, for fear of king Henry. As ſoon as they were informed of the death of don Pedro, theſe ladies were almoſt diſtracted with grief. Every one compaſſionated them, for they were the true heiresses of Caſtille, which was their juſt right, by ſucceſſion to their father.

This matter was thus opened to the duke: 'My lord, it is time you ſhould think of re-marrying: we know of a very noble match for you, one from which you or your heirs will be kings of Caſtille. It will be a charitable deed to comfort and adviſe damſels who are daughters of a king, eſpecially when in ſuch a pitiable ſtate as thoſe ladies are. Take, therefore, the eldeſt for your bride. We adviſe you to do ſo; for at this moment we know not where you can more nobly ally yourſelf, nor from whence greater profit can accrue to you.'

Theſe and ſuch like words made an impreſſion on the duke, and were ſo agreeable to him that he conſented to what they had propoſed with much good will. He immediately ordered four knights to ſeek theſe ladies without delay, whoſe names  
were

were Constance and Isabella. The duke himself set out from Bourdeaux, when he knew they were coming, to meet them in grand array. He married the eldest, the lady Constance, at a village on the road called Rochefort, on the other side of the city of Bourdeaux, and gave there, on the day of his marriage, a splendid feast, to which were invited a great number of lords and ladies to add to its magnificence. Soon after the wedding, the duke conducted his lady to Bourdeaux, where there were again grand entertainments. The duchess and her sister were much feasted by the ladies and damsels of Bourdeaux, who presented them with magnificent gifts and presents for the love they bore the duke.

News was brought to king Henry in Castille, and to all the barons of the realms who were allied to him by fealty and homage, that his niece had married the duke of Lancaster, and that it was supposed the younger sister would espouse the earl of Cambridge upon the duke's return to England. The king was very melancholy on hearing this, and summoned his council. He was then advised to send able ambassadors to the king of France, to explain his situation. The king agreed to their opinions, and chose the wisest men in his kingdom to go to France. They set out with a grand retinue, and continued their road without interruption until they came to Paris, where they found the king, who received them with every politeness. The king of France had many interviews with these ambassadors, who had full powers, properly

sealed and authenticated, to enter into any treaties, and to act in every thing for their lord, so that many secret councils were held. At last, every thing was concluded; and a treaty was entered into between the two kings, of perpetual amity, love and alliance, which was most solemnly sworn to be maintained, and that neither party would dissolve or weaken without the other's consent. The king of France swore, on the word of a king, that he would aid and assist the king of Castille in every matter which might concern him, and that he would never make peace with the king of England without his being a party.

Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, who much loved the king of Spain, took great pains to bring this treaty about. After this business had been completely finished, the ambassadors took their leave and returned to Spain. They found their king at Léon, who was much pleased at having so well concluded the matters they were sent on. King Henry, from this alliance, felt himself ever after much more assured and comforted.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER APPOINTS GOVERNORS  
IN GUIENNE: HE RETURNS TO ENGLAND, AND  
CARRIES HIS LADY WITH HIM.—SIR WALTER  
MANNY DIES IN LONDON.

**W**E now return to the duke of Lancaster, who still resided in the city of Bourdeaux. He had determined that about Michaelmas he would embark for England, in order to make the king his father better acquainted with the affairs of Aquitaine. To this end he made every preparation; and, a little before his departure, he assembled in Bourdeaux all those barons and knights of Gascony who were of the English party. When they were all collected, he addressed them by saying, he had a great desire to return to England on particular business, as well for the advantage of all present as for the principality of Aquitaine; but that he would come back in the ensuing summer, if the king his father would permit it. These words were very agreeable to all who heard them. He then appointed the capital de Buch, the lords de Mucident and de l'Esparre, governors of all those parts of Gascony which were attached to England. In Poitou, he nominated sir Louis de Harcourt and the lord de Partenay. In Saintonge, sir Louis d'Argenton and sir William de Montendre.

He left all the sénéfchals and other officers as they were before.

The council of the Gascons, Poitevins and Saintongers ordered sir Guiscard d'Angle, the lord de Pinane and sir Aimery de Tarbe to accompany the duke to England, in order more fully to explain the affairs of Aquitaine; and the duke, by waiting for them, delayed some little his voyage.

When all was ready, they embarked on board of vessels in the harbour of Bourdeaux, which is large and spacious. The duke was attended by a large body of men at arms and archers, having sixty vessels in the fleet, including those with provisions: he carried with him his lady and her sister. They sailed with favourable winds, which brought them safe to Southampton, where they disembarked, and entered the town. They reposed themselves there for two days, when they set out, taking the road to Windsor, where the king resided. He received his son the duke, the ladies, damsels, and the foreign knights with great joy and feasts, but especially sir Guiscard d'Angle, whom he was delighted to see.

\* About this time that gallant knight sir Walter Manny\* departed this life in the city of London; for which all the barons and knights of England were much afflicted, on account of the loyalty and prudence they had always found in him. He was

---

\*Sir Walter Manny. See Dugdale. He came to England with queen Philippa—was knight of the Garter,

buried

buried with great pomp in the monastery of the Carthusians\*, which he had built, at his own expense, without the walls of London. His funeral was attended by the king, his children, and the barons and prelates of England.

All his landed property on each side of the sea fell to John earl of Pembroke, who had married his daughter Anne. The earl sent two knights to take possession of the lands which had fallen to him in Hainault, and they performed their duty well towards duke Albert, who at that time governed the country in the name of his deranged brother William.

---

#### CHAP. XXXIV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND APPOINTS THE EARL OF PEMBROKE GOVERNOR OF AQUITAINE.—THE SPANIARDS, BEING ALLIES OF FRANCE, ATTACK HIM AT SEA, OFF LA ROCHELLE.

**D**URING this winter (1372), many councils were held in England on the state of affairs, and upon the best methods of conducting them. The English had planned two expeditions; one to Guienne, another into France through Calais; and were gaining allies, as well in Germany as in

---

\* Now the Charter House.



other parts of the empire, where several knights and squires had joined them. They were busily employed in making great preparations for the largest army which had been seen for a long time.

The king of France was regularly informed by some Englishmen of these transactions, the state of them, and what was the end proposed. Upon which, having duly considered his intelligence, he acted accordingly and laid in a sufficiency of provision in all the cities, towns and castles of Picardy; having strongly reinforced the garrisons with men at arms, that the country might not be surpris'd.

When summer was arrived, king Edward kept the feast and solemnity of St. George in Windsor castle, as he was yearly accustomed to do, when sir Guiscard d'Angle was elected a brother-knight with the king, the princes and barons, who were called, in this confraternity, The Knights of the Blue Garter. The king, after this went to London, to his palace of Westminster, where he held a grand council on public affairs. The duke of Lancaster was ordered to invade France by entering Picardy. He was to be accompanied by his brother the earl of Cambridge. The king, at the entreaty of sir Guiscard d'Angle and the Poitevins, appointed the earl of Pembroke governor of Aquitaine, in room of the duke of Lancaster, with orders to hasten to those countries, and to conduct the war against the French.

The Gascons and Poitevins had requested of the king by letters, as well as by sir Guiscard d'Angle, that

that if he should be advised not to send any of his own children, he would nominate the earl of Pembroke, whom as they loved much they desired to have, for they knew him to be a good and hardy knight. The king, therefore, spoke to the earl of Pembroke, who, with several other barons and knights, was present at this council, saying; 'John, my fair son, I ordain and institute you governor and captain of all the men at arms in Poitou, who according to the accounts I have had, are very numerous; and also of those you will conduct from hence thither. You will, therefore, accompany sir Guiscard d'Angle into Poitou.' The earl of Pembroke, falling on his knees, replied: 'My lord, I return you my warmest thanks for the high honour you have conferred upon me. I will act for your majesty beyond seas as one of your smallest marshals.' After this, the council broke up, when the king returned to Windsor, taking sir Guiscard d'Angle with him. They frequently conversed on the affairs of Poitou and Guienne. In one of these conversations, he said; 'My lord, when our governor and captain shall arrive in that country, we shall carry on a good war; for we shall there find between four and five hundred lances, who will all cheerfully obey you, but they must be regularly paid.' The king answered; 'Sir Guiscard, sir Guiscard, do not be uneasy on account of wanting money to continue the war, for I have enough, and will eagerly employ it for such an occasion, as it very sensibly affects us and our kingdom.' In these and such like discourses did the king of England  
amuse

amuse himself with sir Guiscard d'Angle, for he had great confidence in him, not indeed without reason.

The season was now arrived for the departure of the earl of Pembroke, who took his leave of the king, as did all those who accompanied him. It seems to me that sir Otho de Grantson\*, *d'outre la Somme*, was appointed to go with him.

The earl of Pembroke had not a very large force with him, but only the knights of his household, on account of the information which sir Guiscard d'Angle had given the king; but he carried a sufficient sum in nobles and florins to pay three thousand fighting men. After taking leave of the king, they set out for Southampton, where they remained fifteen days waiting for a wind. On the sixteenth, they had a wind to their wish; and, embarking, they sailed out of the harbour for the coasts of Poitou, recommending themselves to the care of God and St. George.

King Charles of France was perfectly well acquainted with the greater part of the king of England's councils, (I do not know by whom or how they were revealed to him) and that sir

---

\* Sir Otho de Grantson. Barnes calls him sir Thomas Grantson; but sir Thomas Grantson was made prisoner by Bertrand du Guesclin, and, I suppose, was then at Paris. Froissart, I should imagine, by mentioning *outre la Somme*, must mean a different person, one who had an estate beyond the Somme. In the MS. collections of Mr. Antis, a sir Otho Grantson is spoken of; but, by a reference to Dugdale, it appears he must have lived in a much earlier period.

Guiscard d'Angle and his companions were gone to England to request from the king an able leader. He already knew that the earl of Pembroke had the appointment, and that he was on his way thither. Upon which, the king of France had secretly raised a large naval armament; that is to say, it had been done at his request, for it belonged to king Henry of Castille, who had sent this armament in conformity to the treaty which had been lately concluded between them. This Spanish fleet consisted of forty large vessels and thirteen barks, well provided with towers and ramparts, as the Spanish ships usually are. Four valiant men were the commanders of this fleet: Ambrosio de Balequer, Cabesço de Vaccadent, Hernando de Léon, Rodrigo de Rofas\*.

These Spaniards had remained a considerable time at anchor, waiting for the return of the Poitevins, and the coming of the earl of Pembroke; for they were well informed that he was to land on the coast of Poitou, and had therefore placed themselves at anchor before the town of la Rochelle.

It happened, therefore, that on the day preceding the vigil of St. John the Baptist, in the

---

\* I have copied the names of these Spanish captains from Barnes, but am doubtful if they are right; for in Choisi's hist. of Charles V. *Rodrigue de Roux* is mentioned as admiral. In Villaret's hist. of France, *Boccanera* is called the admiral. Indeed, this is nearer to Froissart, who calls the first captain *Ambroise de Bouquenegre*. Barnes gives not any authority for his alterations.

year of grace 1372, when the earl of Pembroke and his fleet expected to enter the port of la Rochelle, they found that the Spaniards had blocked up the entrance by lying before its mouth, and were ready prepared to receive them. When the English and Poitevins saw the Spaniards thus posted, and that an engagement must happen, they encouraged each other, though they were not near an equal match, either in regard to the number of vessels or men, and made preparations for an immediate combat, posting their archers on the bows of the ships.

The Spaniards were well equipped with men at arms and foot soldiers, who had cross-bows and cannons: many had also large bars of iron, and flaves loaded with lead, to make their attacks with. They advanced with shoutings and a great noise. These large ships of Spain made sail to gain the wind, so that they might bring their towers to bear on the English, who little suspected their intent, and less feared them. Thus did they bear down on them full sail. At this commencement, great were the shouts and cries on both sides. The English behaved gallantly, and the earl of Pembroke, his knights and squires acted worthy of their honour.

The engagement was very severe, and the English had enough to do; for the Spaniards who were in large vessels had great bars of iron and huge stones, which they launched and flung from their ships in order to sink those of the English, by which they wounded desperately both sailors and men at arms.

The

The knights of England and Poitou that day shewed excellent proofs of chivalry and prowess. The earl fought gallantly, seeking his enemies every where, and did extraordinary feats of arms: Sir Otho de Grantson, sir Guiscard d'Angle, the lord de Pinane and all the other knights behaved equally well.

---

#### CHAP. XXXV.

THE INHABITANTS OF LA ROCHELLE REFUSE TO ASSIST THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.—THE SENESCHAL AND THE LORD DE TANNAY-BOUTON, WITH OTHERS, COME TO HIS AID.

**B**Y what I have heard from those who were present at this engagement, the English and Poitevins shewed plainly they wished for victory, and obtained great praise for their valour; for never people exerted more courage, nor fought more bravely, considering what a handful of men they were in comparison with the Spaniards, and in such small vessels that one cannot but marvel how it lasted so long: but their great prowess and chivalry raised a mutual spirit of emulation, and, had their vessels been of the same size with their enemy's, the Spaniards would not have had the advantage; for they handled their spears, which were well steeled, so briskly, and gave such terrible strokes,

strokes, that none dared to come near unless he were well armed and shielded ; but the showers of stones, lead and iron bars annoyed them exceedingly, and in this first engagement several knights and squires were severely wounded.

The Rochellers saw plainly the whole of this engagement, but never offered to advance to the assistance of their countrymen, leaving them to shift for themselves. This battle lasted until night, when each party separated and cast their anchors : but the English lost two barges of provision, and all those in them were slain.

Sir John Harpedon, who at that time was sénéchal of la Rochelle, employed himself all the night in entreating the inhabitants, the mayor, John Chauderon, and the others to arm themselves, and to draw out the commonalty, and embark in the vessels and barges which were lying on the shore, in order to assist and aid their fellow-subjects whom they had seen so valorously defend themselves. The inhabitants, however, who had no inclination so to do, excused themselves by saying they had their town to guard ; that they were not seamen, nor accustomed to fight at sea, nor with the Spaniards ; but that, if the battle had been on shore, they would very willingly have complied with his request. The business remained in this state, and nothing could bring them to change their resolution.

At this moment there were in la Rochelle the lord de Tannaybouton, sir James de Surgeres and sir Maubrun de Linieres, who handsomely acquitted

quitted themselves in joining their entreaties with those of the sénéchal. When these four knights saw they could not gain any thing, they armed themselves, ordering their people, who were not in any great numbers, to do the same; and, on the return of the tide, they embarked in four boats which they took from the shore, at break of day, and made for the vessels of their friends, who were right glad to see them. They told the earl of Pembroke and sir Guiscard d'Angle, that they must not expect any assistance from la Rochelle, as the townsmen had positively refused it; to which, as they could not better themselves, they replied that they trusted in the mercy of God, and would wait the event; that a time might come when the Rochellers should repent of their refusal.

---

## CHAP. XXXVI.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE IS DEFEATED, AND MADE PRISONER BY THE SPANIARDS.—THEY SAIL FROM LA ROCHELLE WITH THEIR PRISONERS.—THE CAPITAL DE BUCH ARRIVES THERE, BUT TOO LATE.

**W**HEN it was day, and the tide had flowed full, the Spaniards weighed their anchors, and, with a great noise of trumpets and drums, formed



formed a line of battle, like to that of the preceding day, with their large vessels, which were well manned and armed; and having gained the wind in hopes of inlosing the English vessels, which were but few in comparison, the before mentioned four captains led the van in handsome order.

The English and Poitevins, observing their line of battle, formed theirs accordingly, and, having collected themselves together, placed their archers in front. The Spaniards, under the command of these captains, bore down on them full sail, and began the engagement, which was dreadfully deadly. When they came to close quarters, the Spaniards flung out grappling hooks with chains of iron, which lashed the English to their vessels so that they could not separate, and thus, as it were held them close\*.

With the earl of Pembroke there were twenty-two knights, who united good inclinations to tried valour, and who vigorously defended themselves with spears, swords and other weapons. They remained there closely engaged, fighting desperately, for a considerable time; but the Spaniard had too much the advantage, as their vessels were larger and higher above the water than those of the English, from which they flung down stones bars of iron and lead, that much annoyed their ad-

---

\* The Memoires de du Guesclin say, that fire ships were first used in this engagement by the Spaniards, and that by their means thirteen of the largest English ships were destroyed

*Coll. Memoires Historiques*, vol. i. p. 432

verſaries. The engagement continued with great fury between them until near nine o'clock ; and no people ever laboured harder than the Engliſh and Poitevins, but the greater part of their men were now wounded by the ſtones and other things which were thrown on them, and that gallant knight of Gaſcony ſir Aimery de Tarbe was ſlain, as well as ſir John Lauton, who was knight of the body to the earl of Pembroke.

Four large Spaniſh ſhips had grappled with that in which was the earl: they were commanded by Cabefſo de Vaccadent and Hernando de Léon, and full of men at arms for the combat and to work the veſſels. After an obſtinate reſiſtance, they boarded the earl's ſhip, when he was made priſoner, and all on board ſlain or taken. Among the laſt were, ſir Robert Beaufort, ſir John Curzon, ſir John Grimſtone : ſir Simon Whitaker, ſir John Morton and ſir John Touchet ſhared the fate of the firſt.

At ſome diſtance, the Poitevins, under the command of ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, the lord de Pinane, the lord de Tannaybouton and other knights, with their followers, continued the fight ; and in another ſhip ſir Otho de Grantſon was engaged againſt Ambroife de Boccanera and Roderigo de Roſas, who were too many for him ; ſo that all theſe knights were taken by the Spaniards, not one eſcaped being killed or made priſoner. Their men were alſo in great danger, but their lords, when taken, deſired they would ceaſe the ſlaughter, as they would pay a proper ranſom for them.

Whoever may find himself in such a strait of arms as the earl of Pembroke or sir Guiscard d'Angle were in, before la Rochelle, must cheerfully submit to whatever God or fortune may please to order. But know, that in the loss of this day, of knights or squires, the king of England in comparison was by far the greatest sufferer; for, in consequence of this defeat, he lost afterwards all Guienne, as you will have related in this history.

I was informed that the English vessel which had on board the money for sir Guiscard d'Angle to pay the soldiers of Guienne was lost, and every thing on board with it; so that it was not of profit to any one.

All this day, which was the vigil of St. John the Baptist, the ensuing night, and the morrow until noon, did the Spaniards remain at anchor before la Rochelle, shouting and rioting with joy.

It happened fortunately that a knight of Poitou, called sir James de Surgeres, addressed the person who had taken him with so much eloquence that he agreed to give him his liberty for three hundred francs, which he paid down. He dined in la Rochelle on St. John's day; and by him it was known how the affair had ended, who were slain or made prisoners. Many citizens of the town pretended to be much concerned at this event, though in their hearts they rejoiced, for they never were well inclined towards the English.

In the afternoon of St. John's day, at high flood, the Spaniards weighed anchor, set their sails,

sails, and departed with a great noise of drums and trumpets. They had on their mast-heads standards like to pennons, with the arms of Castille displayed on them, and of such a length that their ends frequently touched the sea. It was a fine sight to see them thus sail off, as they steered for the coast of Galicia.

In this same day, towards the evening, there came into la Rochelle a large body of men at arms, Gascons and English, who had not heard what had passed, but they knew that the Spaniards were lying before the town, and had done so for some time: they came, therefore, to reinforce it. The leaders of the Gascons were, the captal de Buch, sir Beras de la Lande, sir Peter de Landura, the souldich, sir Bertrand du Trane: of the English, lord Thomas Percy, sir Richard de Pontchardon, sir William Farrington, the earl of Angus, sir Baldwin Freville\*, sir Walter Hewet and sir John Devereux†.

When these lords and their troops, which were full six hundred men, were arrived in la Rochelle, the inhabitants made appearance of being very glad to see them, for they dared not do otherwise. They learnt from sir James de Surgeres the event of the

---

\* Sir Baldwin Freville—had summons to parliament the 1st Edward III. See Dugdale. He was competitor for the office of champion at the coronation of Richard II. but the earl-marshal decided on the superior claim of the Dymocks.—See Dugdale's Warwickshire, where the pedigree is.

† Sir John Devereux. See Dugdale. From him are descended the viscounts Hereford, &c.

battle with the Spaniards, and the names of those killed and taken. The barons and knights were sorely afflicted at this news, and thought themselves more unfortunate than they had ever yet been for not arriving sooner. They regretted much the loss of the earl of Pembroke and sir Guiscard d'Angle. I know not how many days they remained in la Rochelle, to consider what would be the best manner for them to conduct themselves, and whither they should march. We will leave them for a while, and speak of Evan of Wales, and of his exploits this season:

---

## CHAP. XXXVII.

EVAN OF WALES \* DEFEATS THE ENGLISH OFF THE ISLAND OF GUERNSEY.—THE KING OF FRANCE SENDS HIM TO SPAIN TO SEEK FOR MEN AT ARMS, TO LAY SIEGE TO LA ROCHELLE.

**E**VAN of Wales was the son of a prince of Wales, whom king Edward, for some reason I am ignorant of, had put to death, and seized his territories

---

\* Among the members of the council of war whom du Guéclin called, before he attacked St. Maure sur Loire, are Carenlouet capitaine de la Roche-pofay, Ivain de Galles, and another knight called the Pourfuiuant d'Amours.—Note 83d in the same

territories and principality, which he had given to his son the prince of Wales. Evan went to France, to lay his complaints before king Charles of the injuries he had suffered from the king of England, by the death of his father and the seizure of his inheritance.

The king of France had retained him in his service, and much advanced him, by giving him the command of a large body of men at arms. In this summer, he sent him to sea with four thousand fighting men, with whom he acquitted himself much to his honour, as you shall now hear.

When he took command of these men at arms, and vessels which the king of France had equipped and provided for him, he embarked in the port of Harfleur, and set full sail for England, making the island of Guernsey, which lies opposite to Normandy. Edmund Ross, squire of honour to the king of England, was then governor of that island.

On hearing of the arrival of the French under the command of Evan, he was much angered, and advanced out to meet him. He issued his summons throughout the island, which is not large, and collected, as well of his own men as of the islanders, about eight hundred, with whom he

---

same vol. says, 'This famous Pourfuiuant d'Amours was also called le chevalier Bauwen.' Most probably a Welshman of the name of Bowen: but how is this to be reconciled with the preceding quotations?—See *Memoires du Guesclin*, vol. iv. of the *Historical Collection of French Memoirs*, p. 397.

gave battle. It was sharp and long; but the English, at last, were defeated, leaving upwards of four hundred dead on the field. Edmund was forced to fly, otherwise he must have been slain or taken. He escaped with great difficulty and saved himself in a handsome castle, called Cornet, situated at the distance of two leagues from the place where the battle had been fought, and which he had beforehand provided with every thing necessary for such a fortress.

After this defeat, Evan, having collected his army, and hearing that Edmund had retreated into Cornet castle, advanced thither, and invested it closely, giving frequent assaults; but the castle was strong and well provided with artillery, so that the French could not gain it.

It was during the time of this siege the unfortunate defeat and capture of the earl of Pembroke and sir Guiscard d'Angle happened before la Rochelle, which has been just related.

The king of France, when he heard of the success of the Spaniards, was exceedingly rejoiced, and paid more attention than ever to the affairs of Poitou; for he thought, perhaps lightly enough, that if the English should have a few more such defeats, the cities and principal towns would willingly surrender to him. He therefore determined, with the advice of his council, to send the constable and all his men at arms into Poitou, Saintonge and the Rochellois, in order to carry on the war more briskly by sea and land, whilst the  
English

English party should be without a leader, for the whole country was wavering in its allegiance.

He therefore sent messengers to Evan of Wales, who was lying before Cornet castle, as he was perfectly acquainted with the state of it, and knew it to be impregnable, ordering him instantly to break up the siege, and put to sea in a vessel equipped for him, and to make sail for Spain to prevail on king Henry to grant him boats and galleys, with his admirals and men at arms, to blockade la Rochelle.

Evan, on receiving the messengers with the king's orders, promptly obeyed them, as was right; broke up the siege, and disbanded his men, lending them vessels to carry them to Harfleur. He himself immediately embarked on board a large ship, and made sail for Spain. Thus was the siege of Cornet castle raised.



## CHAP. XXXVIII.

THE KING OF ENGLAND IS MUCH CAST DOWN AT  
THE CAPTURE OF THE EARL OF PEMBROKE.—  
EVAN OF WALES MEETS THE EARL A PRISONER  
IN SPAIN,

**Y**OU must know, that when the king of England heard of the defeat of the armament he had sent to Poitou, and that it had been overcome by the Spaniards, he was greatly afflicted; so were all those who were attached to him; but for the moment he could not amend it. The wisest in the kingdom imagined that this unfortunate business would cause the loss of the countries of Poitou and Saintonge; and they stated this as their opinion to the king and duke of Lancaster. They held many councils upon it. The earl of Salisbury was ordered thither with five hundred men at arms. However, notwithstanding this order, he never went; for other affairs came into agitation respecting Brittany, which prevented it from taking place. The king repented of this afterwards, when it was too late.

The Spaniards who had taken the earl of Pembroke and his companions were detained some little time at sea by contrary winds. They arrived at the port of St. Andero in Biscay, and entered the town about mid-day, when they conducted their prisoners to a strong castle, and fastened them  
with

with iron chains according to their usual custom; for the Spaniards know not how to shew courtesy to their prisoners, but act like the Germans.

Evan \* of Wales had the same day arrived with his ship at St. Andero, and had entered the hôtel where don Fernando de Rosas and Cabesfo de Vaccadent had conducted the earl of Pembroke and his knights. This was told to Evan in his apartment, saying; ‘Sir, come and see the English knights whom our people have made prisoners, they will enter this hôtel, for it is not long since they arrived.’ Evan being very desirous of seeing them, to know who they were, went out. He met, on quitting his chamber, in the apartment of the landlord, the earl of Pembroke, whom he directly recognized, though he had scarcely ever seen him before. He addressed him in a reproachful manner: ‘Earl Pembroke, are you come into this country to do me homage for the lands you hold of me in the principality of Wales, of which I am the heir, and which your king has deprived me of, through the advice of evil counsellors?’

The earl of Pembroke was much displeased and ashamed, feeling himself a prisoner in a strange country, to be thus apostrophised in his own language by one whom he did not know, and replied, ‘Who are you that you address me in such words?’

---

\* By every thing I can find, this Evan was an impostor.—Llewelyn, the last prince of Wales, was treacherously slain, near Builth, in Edward I.’s reign. Probably the king of France knew this, but employed him in hopes of his assistance against England.—See Barnes and others.

Evan answered, 'I am Evan, son and heir of prince Edmund of Wales, whom your king wickedly and wrongfully put to death, and disinherited me afterwards. But I may perhaps be able, through the assistance of my very dear lord the king of France, to apply a remedy to this, and I will certainly then do so. I wish you to know, that if I can meet you in a proper place and time to offer you combat, I will shew you the wrongs you have done me, as well as the earl of Hereford and Edward Spencer; for by your father and other evil counsellors was my lord and father betrayed, which ought to anger me, and I will be revenged of it whenever I may have an opportunity.'

Sir Thomas St. Aubin, who was one of the earl's knights, stepped forward and eagerly said; 'Evan, if you mean to say and maintain, that my lord has now, or at any other time, committed a dishonourable act, or that my lord his father has done so, or that he owes you any homage or any thing else, throw down your glove, and you will find one ready enough to take it up.' Evan replied; 'You are a prisoner: I shall gain no honour in calling you out, for you are not your own master, but belong to those who have taken you: but when you have gained your liberty, I shall speak out more boldly, for things shall not remain as they now are.'

As he finished these words, some knights and Spanish men of valour got between them, and separated them. The four admirals did not, after this, make any long stay, but led their prisoners

to

to Burgos, to deliver them up to the king of Spain, who at that time resided there.

When the king heard of their coming, and that they were near to Burgos, he sent his eldest son, John, who was called the Infanta of Castille, attended by a large company of knights and squires, to meet and to do them honour; for king Henry knew well that it became him so to act; and he himself paid them much attention, as soon as they were come into his presence. Shortly after, the king issued out his orders, when they were sent to different places in the kingdom of Castille.

---

## CHAP. XXXIX.

THE CONSTABLE DU GUESCLIN TAKES THE  
CASTLE OF MONMORILLON\*, AND OTHER  
PLACES IN POITOU.

WE will return to the affairs of Poitou, which at that time were not trifling matters, and say how those knights from England and Gascony acted who had come into la Rochelle at the feast of St. John the Baptist, as has been before related. They were exceedingly vexed they had not arrived there the preceding day, and been in time

---

\* Monmorillon,—a town in Poitou, eleven leagues from Poitiers.

for the Spaniards. They held long councils how they should act, and which way they should advance; for they already had their suspicions of the loyalty of the Rochellers. They appointed sir John Devereux sénéchal of la Rochelle, with three hundred men at arms for the defence of the castle, for as long as they should be masters of that, the town dared not to rebel. This business done, the capital de Buch, who commanded the expedition, lord Thomas Percy, the earl of Angus, sir Richard de Pontchardon, the souldich, sir Beras de la Lande, and the others, with their men, marched from la Rochelle. About four hundred lances took the road for Soubise\*; for there were some Bretons near that place, who having taken possession of several churches and small forts, had fortified them: but as soon as these lords approached they fled, and the country was freed of such visitors.

At this time, the constable of France, the dukes of Berry and Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the lord Louis de Sancerre, the lords de Clifson and de Laval, the viscount de Rohan, the lord de Beaumanoir, and numbers of the barons of France, had taken the field, and were with the army in the countries of Anjou, Auvergne and Berry: in all, upwards of three thousand spears.

Those lords who were under the immediate command of the constable advanced into Poitou,

---

\* Soubise,—a town in Saintonge, six leagues from la Rochelle.

where they kept in a body, and then proceeded to lay siege to a castle called Monmorillon. On their arrival, they assaulted it briskly, and gained it, putting all within to the sword. They reinforced it with another garrison.

They then marched to Chauvigny\*, on the river Creuse, and besieged it. They remained there two days, but on the third it surrendered, and the garrison were spared. They continued their march towards Luffac†, where there is a town and castle, which surrendered immediately without waiting the assault. They advanced towards the city of Poitiers, and lay one night in the vineyards, which very much alarmed the city, as they were fearful of being besieged; but for this time they were free, for they marched off the following day, advancing towards Moncontour. John Cresswell and David Hollegrave commanded in the place, and had under them about sixty good companions, bold and hardy, who had very much harassed the surrounding countries of Anjou and Touraine, as well as all the French garrisons, so that the constable declared he would not undertake any thing before he had gained this town.

---

\* Chauvigny,—six leagues from Poitiers.

† Luffac,—near Monmorillon.

## CHAP. XL.

THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE TAKES MONCONTOUR BY A CAPITULATION.—HE MARCHES FROM THENCE TO FORM A JUNCTION WITH THE DUKE OF BERRY IN THE LIMOUSIN, WHEN THEY LAY SIEGE TO ST. SEVERE.

THE constable of France, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the lord de Clisson, the viscount de Rohan, the lords de Laval, de Beaumanoir and de Sully, with the others, advanced until they came before Moncontour, a handsome castle, six leagues from Poitiers. On their arrival, they began the siege, and made different assaults in good order; but, as the ditches were very deep round the walls, they could not easily approach. They ordered the peasants to cut timber and faggots, which they caused to be drawn and thrown into them, and afterwards covered with straw and earth. Four days were taken up in doing this. When they had completed it, they began their attacks in earnest, and in a regular way. Those within defended themselves well, for they were masters of their profession; and they sustained the assault one whole day, when they had hard fighting, and were in great danger of being taken. On the sixth, the constable advanced himself with his Bretons in regular order, to make a fiercer assault than any  
of

of the former ones. Being covered with large shields, and armed with pick-axes and mattocks, they came up close to the walls, which they immediately battered, pulling out stones in various places, insomuch that the garrison began to be alarmed: they, however, defended themselves as well as ever garrison did.

John Creswell and David Hollegrave, the governors, saw the ~~peril~~ they were in, and guessed that sir Bertrand, from this manner of proceeding, would not quit the place before he had conquered it; so that, should they be taken by assault, they would certainly be put to death; and, not seeing nor hearing of any succour coming to them, they opened a treaty to surrender the place, on their lives being spared.

The constable, who did not wish to harraß his own people, nor to push too far the garrison, whom ~~he knew~~ to be resolute men at arms, accepted the terms, and agreed they should leave the castle, taking nothing with them but gold or silver, and that they should be escorted to Poitiers.

In this manner did the constable get the castle of Moncontour, of which he took possession, and had it well repaired. He remained in it to refresh himself and men, for he was not determined whether he should march next, to Poitiers or elsewhere.

When the news was known in the city of Poitiers, that the constable and his Bretons had retaken the castle of Moncontour, they were more alarmed than before, and immediately sent off messengers



sengers to lord Thomas Percy, their *sénéchal*, who was on the expedition with the capital de Buch.

At the same time that lord Thomas Percy received this information, sir John Devereux, who resided in the castle of la Rochelle, was told that the constable of France, having encamped before Poitiers, had reconnoitred the place, and that the inhabitants were the more afraid he would besiege it because their *sénéchal* was absent. Sir John did not hear this intelligence with indifference, but set about to aid and comfort the Poitevins: he marched from la Rochelle, with only fifty lances, having appointed, on his departure, one of his squires, named Philip Mansel, governor of the castle until his return. He took the road to Poitiers, which he entered; and the citizens testified their obligations to him for it.

The principal citizens who brought the news from Poitiers to lord Thomas Percy, serving in the capital's army, begged of him to hasten thither; and as they expected an immediate siege, to bring with him as strong a force as he could, for the French army was very considerable. On hearing this, lord Thomas explained the business to the capital, to know what he would say to it. The capital, having considered it, was unwilling to break up his expedition, but gave lord Thomas Percy leave to go there: he set off, and on his arrival in Poitiers was received with great joy by the inhabitants, who were very desirous of having him among them. He found sir John Devereux there, and  
great

great feasting and rejoicings were made on the occasion.

All this was known to the constable, who had continued in Moncontour, and also that Poitiers had been reinforced with a body of men at arms. At the same time he heard from the duke of Berry, who commanded a large army in Auvergne, Berry, and Burgundy upon the borders of Limousin, that he was desirous of laying siege to St. Severe\*, which town belonged to sir John Devereux, but was garrisoned, under his orders, by sir William Percy, Richard Gill and Richard Orme, and a large body of men at arms, who had overrun the countries of Auvergne and Limousin, doing much mischief to both of them. The duke of Berry, on this account, wished to march thither, and therefore entreated the constable, if he had not any other views, that he would join him before St. Severe.

The constable, who was very wise, prudent and inventive in all his undertakings, considered that at that moment he could not expect success before Poitiers, even if he were to march his men thither; for the city had been greatly reinforced with men at arms: he therefore declared he would join the duke of Berry. He set out from Moncontour with his whole army after he had appointed a garrison to defend it, and joined the duke, who thanked him much for coming, as well as all his knights and

\* St. Severe,—a town in Saintonge, near Saintes.

squires. When this junction was formed, there was plenty of men at arms.

The duke of Berry, in company with the constable, reconnoitred St. Severe: their force was about four thousand men at arms. they directly laid siege to the place, declaring they would not depart until they had possession of it. They began the siege with great vigour, and sir William Percy and his companions defended themselves equally well.

News was brought to sir John Devereux in the city of Poitiers, how the duke of Berry, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the constable of France, the lord de Clifson, the viscount de Rohan, with four thousand men at arms, were besieging his castle of St. Severe.

He was very pensive on hearing this, and spoke to lord Thomas Percy, who was present when the intelligence came: ' Lord Thomas, you are sénéchal of this country, and have sufficient influence and power to do what I am about to request of you; which is, that you would advise and assist me in succouring my people, for unless they are reinforced they must be taken by assault.'

' By my faith,' replied lord Thomas, ' I have every inclination and good wish to assist you; and, through love to you, I will set out, and speak to my lord the capital de Buch, who is not far distant. I will do all in my power to induce him to accompany us, to raise the siege, and to offer battle to the French.'

They

They immediately set out from Poitiers, leaving the city under the guard of the mayor of the place, whose name was John Regnault, a good and loyal man. These knights rode until they met the capital de Buch, in the plain, advancing towards St. Jean d'Angely. They remonstrated with him in a courteous manner, how the French had taken Monmorillon, near Poitiers, as well as the strong castle of Moncontour; and that they were now employed at the siege of St. Severe, which belonged to sir John Devereux, to whom certainly some good services were due. Besides, there were shut up in the castle, sir William Percy, Richard Gill and Richard Orme, who were too valiant men to be lost.

The capital de Buch, having considered a moment, replied, 'Gentlemen, what is it you wish me to do?' Some knights who were near had been called to this council, and they replied; 'It is now a long time since we have heard you express a strong desire for an opportunity of fighting with the French, you can never find a more favourable one than by hastening to St. Severe; and, if you will issue your summons to Anjou and Poitou, we shall have a sufficient number to combat the French with the good will we have to meet with them.' 'By my faith,' answered the capital, 'I wish nothing better; and we will soon measure our strength with theirs, if it please God and my lord St. George.'

The capital immediately issued his summons to all barons, knights and squires of Poitou and

Saintonge attached to the English, entreating and enjoining them strictly to meet him, at a certain fixed place, armed and prepared in the best manner they could.

Every knight and squire who received these letters made all possible dispatch to make himself ready, and took the field to meet the capital as speedily as he could. Among the principal were, the lord de Partenay, sir Louis de Harcourt, sir Hugh de Vinoue, sir Thomas his brother, sir Percival de Coulonge, sir Aimery de la Rochechouart, sir James de Surgeres, sir Geoffry d'Argenton, the lords de Puissances, de Rouffillon, de Crupenac, sir John d'Angle, sir William de Montendre, and many other barons and knights; so that they mustered full nine hundred lances and five hundred archers.

---

## CHAP. XLI.

THE GARRISON OF ST. SEVERE, AFTER A SHARP ASSAULT, SURRENDERS TO SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN.—THE CITY OF POITIERS TURNS TO THE FRENCH PARTY.

**I**NTELLIGENCE was brought to sir Bertrand du Guesclin and the army before St. Severe, that the English, Poitevins and their allies were fast approaching with a great force, in order to oblige them to raise the siege.

When the constable heard of this, he was no way alarmed, but ordered every one to arm and  
to

to march directly to the assault. No one disobeyed this command, but French and Bretons advanced to the fort armed and well covered by their shields, when they began a vigorous attack, each lord under his own banner and surrounded by his people. It was a handsome sight to look at, for at this assault there were forty-nine banners, and numbers of pennons. The constable, and the marshal lord Louis de Sancerre were there at their proper posts, labouring hard to encourage the men to conduct their attack with greater valour. Knights and squires of all nations were eager to gain honour and advancement, and performed many gallant exploits. Several crossed the ditches, which were full of water, with their shields on their heads, and marched up to the walls. In doing this, they never retreated, notwithstanding the things which were thrown down on them, but advanced the nearer to the fort. The dukes of Berry and Bourbon, the count d'Alençon and the dauphin d'Auvergne, with several other great lords, were on the ditch encouraging their men, who, on account of such spectators, advanced boldly, fearless of death and danger.

Sir William Percy and the two squires of honour, who were governors of the castle, perceiving how briskly the attacks were made, and that they never cooled nor ceased, were sensible, that, if it thus continued, they could not long resist, and, according to their imagination, no aid was coming to them from any part; for, if they had suspected that a reinforcement was within ten leagues, they

would have taken courage, and have held out until they should have been relieved: but, being ignorant of this, they opened a treaty with the constable, to avoid further loss. Sir Bertrand, who had had certain intelligence that before evening he should see or hear of the English, eagerly concluded the negociation, granting them their lives: on which he made great rejoicings.

He then ordered the army to march into the plain, and draw up in order of battle, saying to the chief commanders; ‘Gentlemen, look to yourselves, for the enemy is advancing, and I hope that we may have a battle before night.’ Each made ready, upon hearing this, as well for the attack as to defend himself.

The English, however, were in no hurry to march further, when they learnt for certain that St. Severe was taken. We will, therefore, speak of what was passing in Poitiers.

At this time there were great dissensions in Poitiers, for three parts of the town wished to turn to the French; but John Regnault, the mayor, and a part of the commonalty, wanted to remain with the English. Notwithstanding this, the richest citizens and the churchmen, of whom there were there plenty, would, whatever might be the consequences, have the constable sent for: indeed they secretly advised him to make haste and take possession of the city, for on his approach they would open to him the gates.

The constable was much rejoiced, and told it to the dukes of Berry and of Bourbon, who determined

mined that he should leave the army with three hundred men at arms, mounted on the fleetest couriers they had. They rode that day and the following night, with scarcely any repose, upwards of thirty leagues by another road than that the English had taken, and by day-break arrived at Poitiers. They found the gates ready opened, and their party prepared to receive them. Had they but delayed one half hour, they would have lost the opportunity; for John Regnault and his friends, having learnt the intention of the others, had sent off in great haste to sir John Devereux and lord Thomas Percy, who, with a hundred spears and as many archers, were within one short league of the city.

The barons and knights of Poitou were thunderstruck at the capture of Poitiers, as well as those from Gascony and England, who were collected in Poitou, to the amount of eight hundred lances and four hundred archers.

They called a council to consider in what manner they should act, for they saw themselves in great difficulties, and were doubtful in whom they could put confidence. The barons and knights of Poitou therefore, the better to re-assure the English, thus addressed them: ‘Certainly, gentlemen, it is exceedingly disagreeable for us to see the affairs of this country in such a state that we cannot bring any remedy to them; but depend upon it, that as long as we exist, and there shall remain any house or fort in Poitou to receive us, we will



always remain steadily and loyally attached to our natural lord the king of England and to you.'

The English knights replied, 'We place our entire confidence in you, and you will find in us companions and friends to death.' There were very long debates, when it was at last resolved, that the Poitevins should march off one way, and the English to a different quarter. They parted from each other in the most amicable manner; that is to say, the lord de Partenay, the lords de Thouars and de Rouffillon, sir Aimery de la Rochechouart, sir John d'Angle, sir Louis de Harcourt, sir Percival de Coulogne governor of Thouars, Hugh de Brionne, Reginald de Thouars, William de Cru-penac, James de Surgeres, and other knights and squires of Poitou, who took the road to Thouars. The English, such as sir John Devereux, lord Thomas Percy, sir Richard de Pontchardon, the earl of Angus, sir Geoffry d'Argenton, sir Matthew Foulkes, sir Thomas Gournay, sir Walter Hewett, sir John Creswell and others, took the road to Niort, which they intended to enter without halting; but, when they arrived there, they found the gates shut and the draw-bridge raised, and were told by the inhabitants they should not have admittance.

The English lords immediately called a council, and declared such an insult was not to be suffered: they drew up in good array, and attacked the town with great courage, which was defended by the inhabitants: but there was not any gentleman or knight within it to order or lead them, only mechanics,

chanics, who knew not what it was to make war, so they were conquered by the English. Could they have held out until vespers, they would have been assisted, for the constable had ordered Thibaut du Pons, with two hundred combatants, to reinforce the garrison. They did not, however, arrive in time, for the town was taken by assault, and pillaged, while men and women were promiscuously put to the sword.

The English took up their quarters in Niort, waiting for intelligence.

---

## CHAP. XLII.

THE FRENCH MAKE THE CAPITAL DE BUCH PRISONER.—LA ROCHELLE TURNS TO THE FRENCH.

**D**URING the time the English were in Niort, from whence, in truth, they were afraid of departing, Evan of Wales, in company with the Spanish admiral don Roderigo di Rosas, arrived at la Rochelle with fourteen large ships and eight galleys, laden with men at arms and provision. They anchored before the town, so that nothing could enter or come out without danger of being taken. Upon which the Rochellers, who were wavering, had a secret interview with Evan and the

the Spanish admiral; and it was agreed mutually not to hurt each other.

The Spaniards and French remained at anchor before la Rochelle; but they had spies in the countries of Poitou and Saintonge, to inform them what was going forwards. The governor of la Rochelle was at that time Philip Mansel.

The constable of France still continued in Poitiers, but he sent the lord du Pons and Thibaut du Pons, with three hundred spears, including every one, to the castle of Soubise.

Soubise is a very strong castle situated on the sea-shore, directly at the mouth of the river Charente, where it disembogues itself into the sea. The lady of Soubise was in the castle, but had not many men at arms to garrison it: she therefore directly sent off a squire to John de Grailly, captain de Buch, constable of Aquitaine, to ask for succour, who was at the time in St. Jean d'Angely. He sent orders for sir Henry Haye, sénéchal of Angoulême, sir William de Marneil, nephew to the lord Raymond de Marneil, lord Thomas Percy and sir John Creswell, to come immediately to St. Jean d'Angely.

Evan of Wales was informed of all the particulars of this siege, as well as the assembly of St. Jean d'Angely. He therefore picked out four hundred lances of those most to be depended upon from his whole army, and, embarking them on board thirteen barges, set sail with sir James de Montmoy and Morellet his brother. He left the Spanish admiral, with the remainder of the armament before

before la Rochelle, and arrived undiscovered on the opposite shore to the castle of Soubise where the lord de Pons was, who knew nothing of this embarkation.

The capital was also ignorant of it, as he was collecting his forces in St. Jean d'Angely; for, had he suspected any thing of the sort, he would have had a larger body of men: but he sent back a considerable number, having also left many in St. Jean d'Angely.

He marched with only two hundred lances at the utmost, and about night arrived near to the French army and to the castle of Soubise. They dismounted on the outside of a small coppice, to tighten their gloves of mail and regirth their horses. Having remounted, they displayed their banners, dashing among the French with their shouts of war. Many were slain and wounded at this onset, for the French were not on their guard. The lord du Pons and Thibaut du Pons, with sixty of their principal men, were made prisoners, and the rest put to flight.

At this moment, Evan of Wales with his forces advanced, having hastily crossed the Charente, with torches and other lights, for it was exceedingly dark. These four hundred lances, who were determined men and quite fresh, fell upon the English and Gascons, who thought they had accomplished their business. Many were scattered about pillaging, and the knights were attending to their prisoners. They were treated by these  
new

new comers very roughly, and in a short time completely defeated.

An able squire of Vermandois, called Peter Danvilliers \*, advanced and came so near the capital de Buch that he made him his prisoner by a gallant deed of arms. The capital was, at this period, the knight of Gascony attached to England whom the king of France and the Frenchmen wished most to gain, for he was a hardy and enterprising captain.

Lord Thomas Percy was also that day made prisoner by a Welsh priest, called David Howell †. Sir Maubrun de Linieres, sir Henry Haye, and several other knights and squires were taken likewise. Sir Walter Hewett, sir Petiton de Courton, sir William Farrington and Carmille ‡ escaped with great difficulty: they made for the town of Soubise, but would have failed of help if the lady had not been on the walls, who had the gate instantly opened. They entered the place with several others.

On the next morning, Evan of Wales ordered all his barges and boats to be drawn up before Soubise, on which he made a brisk attack. The

\* Danvilliers. Froissart calls him Pierre Danielles; but I copy from Villaret's hist. de France, tom. v. who says that Charles V. gave the squire twelve hundred livres for the ransom of the capital, and cites le Tresor de Chartres for the receipt.

† David Howell. Villaret calls him David Honnel. I suppose it should be David Howel. In those days, it was common for priests to engage in war, notwithstanding their priesthood.

‡ Carmille. Q.

lord du Pons and sir Thibaut du Pons, who had been rescued, assaulted it on the opposite side. The garrison and town defended themselves valiantly; but the lady called a council of the knights and barons, as the place was not strong, and could not hold out for any time; for she did not, in the present state of affairs, expect any success; and sent them to negotiate with the French.

A treaty was made on such terms that the knights who were in the town might retire in safety to Niort, Saintes, Lusignan or whithersoever they pleased; but the lady of Soubise was to place herself under the obedience of the king of France.

The English departed from Soubise, and were safely escorted wherever they chose to go. The French took possession of the town and received the fealty of the lady, who swore allegiance to the king of France for herself and for her dependencies.

Evan of Wales, sir James de Montmoy, and their men, returned to their boats, carrying with them the captal de Buch, and their other prisoners, to the large fleet, which was lying before la Rochelle.

The lord du Pons and the Bretons hastened their march toward St. Jean d'Angely, to join the other men at arms whom the constable had sent thither. There were the viscount de Rohan, the lords de Clisson, de Tournemine, de Beaumanoir and de Rochfort, sir William des Bourdes, sir Oliver de Mauny, sir Reginald de Limoufin, sir Geoffry Ricon, Yvon de Laconnet, Alain de St. Pol, Caruelle and several more, who came before the  
town

town of St. Jean d'Angely, and made a great show as if they meant to assault it. The inhabitants, seeing the country was lost, and their captain taken, at the same time not expecting succour from any part, surrendered themselves to the French.

The Bretons then marched towards Angoulême, which turned to the French, as did Taillebourg. They next advanced to Saintes, where they remained two days and two nights; for the governor, sir William Farrington, said he would not surrender so easily, and made preparations for its defence; but the bishop of the town, who was a Frenchman, worked upon the citizens so far as to induce them to seize the governor, and declare they would put him to death if he would not permit them to surrender.

Sir William consented, provided when they treated for themselves they did so for him, and that he should be permitted to march out free. This treaty was accepted, and the French took possession of Saintes and its castle. Sir William Farrington marched out, and was escorted to Bourdeaux.

Evan of Wales still lay before la Rochelle in company with the Spanish admiral, don Roderigo de Rosas, with forty large ships, thirteen barges and eight galleys. There were many negotiations between them and the citizens; but these last could not do any thing so long as the castle was in the hands of the English. They waited therefore, dissembling their intentions, until the English should

should have drawn off the greater part of the garrison, as they were doing by little and little, and until sir John Devereux had left it under the command of Phillip Mansel, who had but a hundred companions one with the other.

At this time, a citizen called John Candorier\*, mayor of the town, assembled a meeting of those that were more inclined to the French than to the English, and addressed them: ‘ Gentle sirs, we see our neighbours taking part with the French on all sides of us, and we shall soon be so inclosed that we shall not know which way to turn ourselves, nor even to go out of our town. It would therefore be expedient, as the moment seems favourable, to consider in what manner we may be able to gain possession of the castle, which has so much annoyed and vexed us, for the garrison is now much weakened. Phillip Mansel is not very crafty. I will therefore tell him I have received orders from the king of England, which command me to arm and muster all the inhabitants of the town in a place which I will name, but that I must know the number of the garrison as well as the townsmen, so that I may be enabled to send him an exact account. I will desire him to march out of the castle and make his muster before me, which I am persuaded he will do. We will then have provided an ambuscade among the old ruins, on the outside of the castle, of two hundred companions, who, when the garrison have

---

\* Candorier. He was called Chaudron before.

marched



marched out, shall post themselves between them and the draw-bridge, which will have been let down. We will also have a sufficient force elsewhere, who must advance in their front and make them prisoners; by which we shall take both castle and garrison, if you, gentlemen, approve of my plan.'

They all replied in the affirmative, and adopted it, appointing the mayor captain of the enterprise.

The mayor, shortly afterward, sent to invite the governor to a grand entertainment, where he met most of the principal inhabitants that were in the plot. The conversation ran chiefly on the king of England and his affairs: during which a large packet was brought to the mayor, sealed with the great seal of England, the better to impose on Phillip Mansel, who could not read, but knew well the seal. The mayor read aloud this letter, putting such words in it as suited his purpose, but which were not written. He then addressed his guest: 'Governor, you see and hear what the king our lord's commands are to you and me. You must make your muster to-morrow, as we will do ours.' The governor, who but too well believed all he had heard, said he would willingly obey, and with this he took his leave.

During the course of the night, the mayor chose two hundred men, whom he well armed, and before day placed them in ambush among the old walls on the outside of the castle. After nine o'clock, the mayor ordered the bells to ring and the

the townsmen to arm themselves. Soon after, Phillip Mansel armed his garrison, of sixty able men, and fit to defend the place. They marched out of the castle; but when they had passed the draw-bridge, the men who formed the ambuscade sallied forth, and posted themselves between the English and the gate.

The garrison now saw they were betrayed, and marched towards the ambuscade in hopes of regaining the entrance of the castle; but at this moment the mayor advanced, with upwards of two thousand of the inhabitants, so that the English, being attacked in front and rear, were all made prisoners: they surrendered, on having their lives saved. The castle was not yet taken; for the English had left twelve of their men within, who had strongly closed the gate.

The mayor then came up to the governor and his men, and said; 'Gentlemen, attend to what I say: if you do not immediately give orders for the castle to surrender, you may be assured we will have you all beheaded at the foot of this bridge.' The English replied, they would willingly do all in their power, and held several parleys with those of the castle. It was agreed on all sides, that those who had been made prisoners and the remainder in the castle should be embarked on board a ship, and conducted by the mayor and burgessees to Bourdeaux.

Thus did the Rochellers win their castle. When the dukes of Berry, Burgundy, Bourbon, the marshal de Sancerre, the viscount de Rohan, the

lords de Sully, du Pons, de Clifson, de Beattmanoir, and the other barons and knights of France were informed of it, they quitted Berry, Anjou and Limousin, where they had made their quarters, and took the direct road for Poitiers, where the constable resided. In their march, these lords took a town in Poitou called St. Maixant\*, which surrendered as soon as they came before it. The castle was taken by assault, and all in it put to the sword. They afterward took the castle of Merle, the castle of Aunay, and several other forts in their road.

When they were arrived at Poitiers, they sent messengers to treat with the Rochellers, but they would not open their gates to them. They told the messengers, that the inhabitants would not surrender themselves in so easy a manner; but that if the duke of Berry and the before-mentioned lords were willing to agree, within six days to send them passports to come to Poitiers, they would then declare to them their intentions, and fully explain what they meant to do.

The messengers returned, and told what the inhabitants had said.

Passports were granted, and some of the burghesses came to Poitiers, when they declared to the lords that it was their intention to place themselves under the obedience of the king of France; but that they would not allow of any castle, and

---

\* St. Maixant,—in the road between Saintes and Poitiers, 15 leagues from the latter.

the present one must be razed to the ground : that it should be declared, under the king's seal, that no other should be erected : that the town of la Rochelle, and country dependant on it, should remain for ever as the particular domain, and under the jurisdiction, of the kings of France, and that it should never be severed from it by marriage, peace, or by any other means, whatever fortune may befall the kingdom of France : that the town should be allowed a mint, with liberty to coin florins, and black and white money, with the same alloy and form as those of Paris.

The French lords would not agree to these terms until the king had considered them ; and they gave the Rochellers passports to wait on him at Paris.

Twelve burgesſes went to the king, who granted them every thing they had asked. He entertained them handsomely, and gave them several rich jewels. When they returned to la Rochelle, they displayed their charters, which were sealed with the king's seal, and had been confirmed in the parliament of the king and his peers.

They immediately began to demolish and raze to the ground the large and strong castle of la Rochelle. They then sent to inform the lords who were at Poitiers, that if they would come thither the gates would be open to them.

The constable of France went with only two hundred men at arms. They received him with great joy, and did to him their homage and fealty as

to the king of France; for he shewed them a lawful commission from the king, which constituted him his representative in all those parts of the realm.

---

### CHAP XLIII.

SIR BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN TAKES SEVERAL CASTLES IN THE ROCHELLOIS.—THE KING OF ENGLAND EMBARKS TO COME TO THE ASSISTANCE OF THOUARS, BUT IS PREVENTED BY CONTRARY WINDS: UPON WHICH THOSE OF THOUARS, AND MANY OTHERS IN POITOU, SURRENDER TO THE FRENCH.

**W**HEN sir Bertrand du Guesclin had resided four days in la Rochelle, and had pointed out to the inhabitants in what manner they should support and demean themselves henceforward, he set out on his return to the lords he had left at Poitiers, whom he instantly marched off to conquer other strong places in Poitou. They were full three thousand lances.

On their departure from Poitiers, they laid siege to the castle of Benon\*, and declared they would not leave it until it had changed masters. A

---

\* Benon,—a small town in Aunis, diocese of la Rochelle.

squire from the county of Foix, named William de Pau, was governor of the place, under the captain de Buch: he had with him a Neapolitan knight, called sir James, but without any surname. Many violent assaults were made, which were well repulsed by the garrison.

Not far distant was the town of Surgeres\*, which was garrisoned with English, by orders of the captain, then a prisoner, who said one evening they would beat up the French quarters. They therefore marched out, according to an agreement with those of Marans†, and mustered in the whole about forty lances: they fell upon the quarters of the constable of France, wounded many, and particularly slew one of his own squires. The army were roused, and the French collected together as fast as they could; but the English, who had performed all they intended, re-entered their fortresses unhurt.

The constable was so enraged at this, that he swore he would never quit the spot where he was without conquering the castle of Benon, and putting to death all within it. He gave orders that very morning for every one to be ready for the assault, and had large machines brought, so that for a long time such an attack had not been seen. The men at arms and the Bretons did not spare themselves: they entered the ditches with shields on their heads, and advanced to the foot of the

---

\* Surgeres,—a town in Aunis, six leagues from la Rochelle.

† Marans,—a town in Aunis, six leagues from la Rochelle.

walls with pick-axes and iron crows, with which they worked so effectually that a large breach was made, through which they might easily enter. The castle was taken, and all within put to the sword.

The constable had it repaired and new garrisoned. He then advanced towards Marans, the garrison of which surrendered on having their lives and properties saved. He next came to Surgeres, which also put itself under the obedience of the king of France; for the English garrison had gone away, being afraid to wait the arrival of the constable. He marched after this to the castle of Fontenay le Comte\*, where the lady of sir John Harpedon resided. He assaulted both town and castle frequently: at last, the garrison left it on capitulation, and retreated to Thouars with the lady, under passports from the constable. The French therefore took possession of the castle and town, and halted there to rest themselves.

Sir Bertrand and the lords of France marched to besiege Thouars, whither the greater part of the knights of Poitou had retired, namely the viscount de Thouars, the lords de Partenay, de Poufanges, de Cors, de Crupignac, sir Louis de Harcourt, sir Geoffry d'Argenton, sir James de Surgeres, sir Percival de Coulogne. They had caused to be made at Poitiers and at la Rochelle large machines and cannons, with which they much

---

\* Fontenay le Comte,—a city in la Vendée, bishoprick of la Rochelle.

harassed

harassed these lords of Poitou in Thouars; who, having mutually considered their situation, proposed a treaty, the terms of which were, that there should be a truce for them and all that belonged to them until Michaelmas ensuing, 1372; during which time, they should let the king of England, their lord, know the state of the town and country: and if, within that period, they were not succoured by the king of England or some of his children, they were, for themselves and their territories, to swear obedience to the king of France.

When the treaty was agreed to, some of the knights returned to Paris. The captal de Buch was conducted thither, and imprisoned, under a good guard, in one of the towers of the Temple. The king was so much pleased with this prize that he gave to the squire that had taken him twelve hundred francs.

The messengers from the lords of Poitou arrived in England, to acquaint the king, the prince of Wales (who at that time had pretty well recovered his health) and the council with the situation of Poitou and Saintonge.

The king, learning that he was thus losing all the territories which had cost him so much to conquer, remained pensive and silent: at last he said, that in a very short time he would go to that country with such a powerful force as would enable him to wait for the army of the king of France. and never return to England before he



three hundred spears. In this number were, the lords de Duras, de Courton, de Mucident, de Rosen, de Langoren, and de Landuras, sir Peter de Landuras, sir Peter de Courton, and sir William Farrington, an Englishman,

This body of men left Bourdeaux, and advanced to Niort, where they found sir Walter Hewett, sir John Devereux, sir Thomas Gournay, sir John Creswell, and several others. When they were all assembled, they amounted to about twelve hundred combatants. Sir Richard de Pontchardon arrived there also, and brought with him twelve hundred more.

The king of England and his children, with his large army, were beaten about on the sea, and could not land at la Rochelle, nor any where near it, for wind and weather were against them. They remained in this situation for nine weeks; and Michaelmas was so near at hand that he found it was not possible for him to keep his engagement with the Poitevin lords in Thouars. He was severely disappointed at this, and disbanded his troops to go whither they wished. The king, on his return, said of the king of France, 'that there never was a king who had armed himself so little, nor one who had given him so much embarrassment.'

Thus did this large fleet steer to England, when it had as favourable a gale as could be wished. After they were disbanded, there arrived at Bourdeaux upwards of two hundred merchant ships for wines.

When

When Michaelmas was nearly arrived, the barons of England and Gascony, who had advanced to Njort in order to attend the king of England at Thonars, were very much surprised that they heard not any tidings of him. In order, therefore, to acquit themselves, they sent messengers to the Poitevin lords in Thouars, who said to them; 'Very dear lords, we are sent hither by the lords of Gascony in the dependence of the king of England, and by those English lords now in company with them, who have desired us to inform you, that they have collected all their forces, which may amount to about twelve hundred fighting men\*, ready and willing to serve you. They entreat you to inform them, if, in the absence of the king of England and his children, they can assist you, and if the relief may now be accepted, for they are eager to adventure their lives and fortunes in your company.'

The barons of Poitou replied; 'We will call a council on what you have said; and we return our kind thanks to the barons of Gascony and

---

\* All the printed copies and MSS. except the one I have lately quoted, have 1200. In the preceding page, Froissart says 1200 men came to Njort with sir John Devereux, &c. and that sir Richard de Pontchardon brought 1200 more. They ought, therefore, to have been 2400. My MS. nearly reconciles this by saying, that, 'the herald Chandos, who carried the message to the knights in Thouars, informed them his lords were assembled in Njort with 1200 lances, English and Gascons, and about 2000 archers and lusty varlets.'

England for sending to us, and for being so well prepared and willing to assist us.'

The knights of Poitou assembled; but at the first meeting they could not agree on any determination, for the lord de Partenay, who was one of the principal barons, was desirous they should defend themselves, as if the king of England had been present: but others maintained, that they had given under their seals a declaration, that if neither the king of England nor any of his children were present they would surrender themselves to the obedience of the king of France. The lord de Partenay returned to his hôtel in a very ill humour; but he was afterwards so much talked to that he consented to agree with the others. They therefore sent word, that according to their treaty, it was absolutely necessary for the king of England or one of his sons to be present. The English and Gascons at Niort were much vexed on hearing this, but they could not prevent it.

The dukes of Berry, Burgundy, Bourbon, the constable of France, the lord de Clifson, the viscount de Rohan, the dauphin of Auvergne, the lord Louis de Sancerre, the lord de Sully, and the barons of France: in all, about ten thousand lances, without reckoning the others, advanced from Poitiers, and drew up in battle-array before Thouars the eve of Michaelmas-day, and also on the feast day until evening, when they retired to their quarters. On the morrow, the two brothers of the king of France and the constable sent to the knights of Poitou in Thouars, to remind them  
of

of what they had sworn and sealed. They returned for answer, that they should very soon retire to Poitiers, when they would put themselves and their dependencies under the obedience of the king of France.

The lords of France, satisfied with this answer, departed from before Thouars; and the dukes disbanded the greater part of their men.

On this separation, the lord de Clifson, with a large body of men at arms, of whom the constable had given him the command, came before Mortaigne sur mer, which at that time was attached to the English. An English squire, called James Clerk, was governor of the place, and might have had with him about sixty companions:

When the lord de Clifson came before Mortaigne, he assaulted it very vigorously: but, though he did not spare himself on the occasion, he gained nothing; upon which he retreated to his quarters.

The governor, who found he should be hard pushed, sent off secretly to those knights of Gascony and England who were at Niort, to desire they would come that night to Mortaigne; that he would lodge them in his hôtel; and that they might easily pass through the quarters of the French forces, who were but two hundred fighting men.

These lords set out from Niort, with five hundred lances, and rode all night to arrive at Mortaigne, for they had a great desire to catch the lord de Clifson. But a spy, who had left Niort with them, having overheard some part of their intentions,

intentions, made as much haste as possible to the lord de Clifton, whom he found sitting at his supper. He informed him that the enemy had marched from Niort with five hundred combatants, and were advancing fast towards him.

Upon hearing this, the lord de Clifton pushed the table from before him, and hastily armed himself. He mounted his steed, and set off suddenly, with all his men, leaving the greater part of what belonged to them on the field. He never stopped until he arrived at Poitiers. The English were much vexed at their disappointment. They returned to Niort, where they left in garrison Sir John Devereux, the earl of Angus and Cresswell. Sir Walter Hewett went to England. All the others went back to Bourdeaux, burning in their way the whole of the territories of the lord de Partenay.

Thus was all Poitou conquered, except the fortresses of Niort\*, Elifeth, Mortemer, Mortaigne, Lusignan, Chastel-Accart†, la Roche sur Yon, Gauzar, la Tour de l'Arbre, Merxis and others. These castles, however, held out, and made frequent inroads and attacks on their neighbours; sometimes invading, at other times chased back again.

---

\* Niort,—a city in Poitou, fifteen leagues from Poitiers.

† Châtel l'Archer,—a village in Poitou.

## CHAP. XLIV.

THE DUKE OF BRITTANY DARES NOT OPENLY  
 DECLARE FOR THE KING OF ENGLAND.—SIR  
 BERTRAND DU GUESCLIN LAYS SIEGE TO  
 CIVRAY\*.—THE ENGLISH ARE DEFEATED,  
 AND THE WHOLE OF THE COUNTRIES OF  
 POITOU, SAINTONGE, AND LA ROCHELLE,  
 ARE GIVEN UP TO THE FRENCH.

THE duke of Brittany, who remained peace-  
 ably in his duchy, was much hurt at the  
 losses of the English; for he said, such as he was  
 the king of England and his power had made him,  
 as he never should have been any thing of him-  
 self: that he owed all to the English king, who  
 had made war in his behalf, had lent him large  
 sums of money, and had given to him his daugh-  
 ter in marriage, he would therefore have been  
 happy to have added Brittany as an ally of Eng-  
 land: but all the barons, knights, and squires of  
 that country were too much attached to the French,  
 particularly the lords de Clifson, de Laval, and the  
 viscount de Rohan, who at that time were the  
 greatest lords in Brittany. They addressed the  
 duke in these words: ‘ Dear lord, as soon as we  
 shall clearly perceive that you take any part with

---

\* Civray,—a town in Poitou, on the Charente, ten leagues  
 from Poitiers.

the king of England against the king of France, our sovereign lord, we will all quit you and the country of Brittany.'

The duke could but ill disguise his anger: however, he only said, 'they did great wrong to the king of England.' He now began to open himself more, and to discover his sentiments to others of the lords of Brittany.

The king of France, who had gained over to him all the principal persons in that country except sir Robert Knolles, had besought them to inform him whenever they found the duke acting contrary to their wishes, assuring them he would provide a remedy.

The duke saw that he was not only suspected, but narrowly watched; which alarmed him lest they should seize his person, and send him to Paris. He therefore signified to the king of England his situation, and entreated him to send men at arms to assist him if there should be any occasion. The king ordered thither four hundred men at arms and as many archers, under the command of lord Neville, who arrived at St. Mathieu Fin de Terre\*, where they remained all the winter, without doing any damage to the country, paying for every thing they had; for the duke, on account of the suspicions of his nobles, did not chuse to put them into any of his castles. When

---

\* St. Mathieu Fin de Terre, or St. Mahé, is a village in Brittany, diocese of St. Pol de Léon. Froissart calls it St. Mathieu de Fine Pôterne.

the knights of Brittany saw the English thus come to the assistance of the duke, they were very indignant, and shut up their own castles, shewing much ill will against the duke. Things remained in this doubtful manner all the winter.

As soon as the season permitted, sir Bertrand du Guesclin marched from Poitiers with full fourteen hundred combatants, and laid siege to the town and castle of Civray. There were with him, of Breton knights, sir Alain de Beaumanoir, John de Beaumanoir, Arnoul Limousin, Geoffry Ricon, Yvon de Laconet, Geoffry de Kerimel, with many other knights and squires. They fixed their quarters before Civray, and surrounded them with palisadoes to prevent being surprised in the night. Frequently the most expert of them advanced to make trials of skill with those of the castle, who defended themselves valiantly.

During the siege, sir Robert Micon, and Nicotin l'Escot\*, the governors of Civray, sent intelligence of their situation to sir John Devereux and the earl of Angus, who were in garrison at Niort. They instantly ordered the garrisons from Lusignan and Gouzar to march to Niort, when they amounted all together to six or seven hundred good men at arms, well equipped, without counting the pillagers. They advanced until they came near to Civray, which is but four leagues from Niort; when they halted some time to ar-

---

\* Sir Robert Micon and Nicotin l'Escot. My MSS. have sir Robert Miton and sir Martin Scott.



range themselves, but it had been better for them had they proceeded to the quarters of the constable\*.

News was brought to him of the arrival of the English, whilst they were forming themselves in the plain. He was not any way alarmed at it, but ordered his men to arm without making any delay, and to march out in a body. When he saw them all assembled, he said to them; 'My good gentlemen, what hearts have you for a battle? I fancy we must engage our enemies.' They replied; 'My lord, we are very willing to do so, thanks to God.'

The constable then ordered an ambuscade to be formed, of two hundred combatants, near to the castle; for he judged the garrison would of course make a sally. He then commanded the greater part of the palisadoes to be levelled to the ground, that there might not be any hindrance when he should march out, and drew up his forces in two battalions. Sir Alain de Beaumont commanded one, and sir Geoffry de Marneil† the other. It was strictly forbidden for any one to advance before his banner until ordered, and he was to remain till then quietly in his rank.

\* The historian of Brittany says, they there intoxicated themselves.

† Marneil. The different editions have a variety of names for this person. I have followed the oldest MS. I have, which, from its writing, seems to be of the age with Froissart: but I should rather suppose it ought to be sir Geoffry de Kerimel, as he is particularly mentioned before.

We will now return to sir Robert Miton and sir Martin Scott, who, from the heights of the castle, saw the English in the plain drawn up in battle-array. They said, ' Let us make ready to quit the castle, for we can easily pass through these Bretons ; and when our friends shall see we are engaged, they will come to our help, and we may do much mischief before they will be prepared to defend themselves or suspect our intent.'

About sixty combatants that were to make this fully armed themselves, who, when ready, sallied forth on horseback to skirmish with the enemy ; but they were attacked by the ambuscade which had been laid for them. Hard indeed was the fight, but the English were so surrounded that they could neither advance nor retreat : they were all slain or made prisoners, not one escaping : the two governors were also taken.

The English remained in battle-array in the plain, and the constable of France in his quarters ; for he imagined the English had placed a large ambuscade in a coppice on his rear. The English had brought with them a rout of pillaging Poitevins and Bretons, amounting to about two hundred, whom they sent forward to skirmish with the French.

As soon as these pillagers came opposite to the battalion of the lord constable, they declared themselves loyal Frenchmen, and, if he pleased, would serve under him. The constable immediately assented, commanding them to wheel on one side, when he learnt from them the arrangement

of the English force, and that there was not any ambuscade. On hearing this, the constable was more easy than before; and, having ordered his men to form, he advanced with his banner, marching on the wing of the two battalions. They had dismounted, and pushed towards the palisadoes which they had allowed to remain standing, every one shouting, 'Nôtre Dame Guesclini'

The English, on seeing them issue out of their fort, drew up also on foot, and advanced with great alacrity. Their first onset was against the battalion of the constable, which was fierce and desperate. The English drove quite through this battalion, and overthrew many. But the Bretons had wisely drawn up their army: there were two battalions on the wing, who, being quite fresh, followed the constable, and, falling upon the English who were tired, beat them most dreadfully. They, however, like men of courage, turned about, without shrinking from their ill-fortune, and combated most valiantly with the arms they had, such as battle-axes and swords of Bourdeaux, with which they dealt many hard blows. Several excellent knights of each side adventured boldly, to exalt their renown. This battle was as well fought, as many gallant deeds performed, and as many captures and rescues took place as had been seen for a long time in all that country; for both armies were on foot, on a plain, without advantage to either. Each laboured to perform his duty well, and many were slain outright or desperately wounded. In short, all the English who had  
marched

marched thither were so completely discomfited that not one escaped death or captivity.

Two good squires were there slain, Richard Neville and William Worley. James Willoughby was very badly wounded. Sir John Devereux, sir Aimery de Rochechouart, David Holgrave, Richard Oliver, John Cresswell, and many others from England and Poitou, were made prisoners.

This battle of Civray happened on the 20th day of March, 1373.

The constable and his army returned to their quarters, where they cleaned and refreshed themselves, and attended to the wounded and prisoners, of whom they had great numbers. The constable then sent sir Alain de Beaumont to hold a parley with the garrison, who told them, that if they suffered themselves to be taken by assault, they would all be put to the sword without mercy. Upon this, the garrison surrendered to the constable, who allowed them to leave the place and march to Bourdeaux, with a passport from him. The French gained this castle and territory, which submitted to the obedience of the king of France.

The Bretons advanced eagerly towards Niort, which is a handsome town in Poitou, and had always supported the interest of the English, who had kept there a very large garrison. As soon as the inhabitants of Niort heard the constable was marching thither, they went out to meet him, and, presenting him the keys

of the town, conducted him and all his men into it with great rejoicings \*.

The Bretons remained there four days to recover themselves, when they departed in great array, with about fourteen hundred lances, for Lusignan †, which surrendered upon condition the garrison should march out unhurt, carrying away all they were able, and with a passport for the constable to conduct them to Bourdeaux. The French gained this castle, which was very grand and handsome, and all the lordship dependant on it, whose vassals became liege men to the king of France.

After this, the Bretons marched to Châtel l'Archer, when the constable sent immediately to the lady de Plainmartin, who was the wife of sir Guiscard d'Angle, and resided in it. She entreated he would grant her an escort, that she might speak with the duke of Berry at Poitiers. The constable complied with her request, and ordered one of his knights to conduct her. When she came before the duke she prostrated herself to the ground. The duke caused her to rise, and demanded what she wished to say.: 'My lord,' replied

---

\* Niort is said to have been gained by a stratagem. After the defeat at Civray the constable ordered his knights to dress themselves in the emblazoned surcoats of his prisoners, which caused the garrison at Niort to open their gates, believing them the English knights returning victorious from Civray.—*Hist. de Bretagne.*

† Lusignan,—a town in Poitou, twelve leagues from Niort.  
she,

she, 'I am summoned by the constable to put myself and my lands under the obedience of the king of France. You know well, my lord, that my husband is now lying a prisoner in Spain: his lands, therefore, are under my direction. I am but a weak woman, and cannot dispose of my husband's property as I please; for, if by accident I should do any thing contrary to what he would have wished, he will be angered and blame me for it. However, to satisfy you, and to keep my lands in peace, I offer you a composition for me and mine, on these terms: that no war shall be made on us, nor will we engage in any offensive or defensive war. When my lord shall have gained his liberty and be returned to England, whither I suppose he will retire, I will inform him of the terms of this composition, and whatever answer he shall send to me, the same I will forward to you.'

'Lady,' answered the duke, 'I grant it on condition that neither for yourself, nor castles, nor fortresses, you lay in a greater store of provision, artillery, or men at arms than are now within them.'

The lady returned to Châtel l'Archer, when the siege was raised; for she shewed the agreement made with the duke of Berry.

This army of Bretons, of which the constable was the leader, departed, and came before Mortemer. The lady de Mortemer surrendered herself and lands to the obedience of the king of

France. She gave up also the castle of Didonne\*, which belonged to her. Thus was all Poitou, Saintonge and la Rochelle freed and delivered from the English.

When the constable had placed sufficient garrisons every where, and found nothing rebellious, as far as the river Gironde, he returned to Paris. The dukes of Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, with the greater part of the barons of France who had been concerned in these conquests, had already arrived there. The king had entertained them most handsomely on their return; but this was nothing to the honours that were shewn sir Bertrand du Guesclin when he came to Paris: the king did not think he could sufficiently testify his regard and esteem for him, and detained him constantly about his person at Paris and elsewhere.

---

\* Didonne,—or St. Georges de Didonne,—a small town in Saintonge.

I believe it was a dependance of the sandich de Trane.—See Ashmole.

## CHAP. XLV.

THE SIEGE OF BECHEREL\*.—PEACE BETWEEN  
THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND NAVARRE.—  
THE DEATH OF THE KING OF SCOTLAND.

**A**BOUT this time, the lords de Clifson, de Laval, d'Avaugour, de Tournemine, de Ricux, de Rochefort, the viscount de Rohan, sir Charles de Dinan banneret of Brittany, the marshal de Blainville, the lords de Hambie, de Ruille, de Fonteville, de Granville, de Farmille, de Denneval, and de Cleres, bannerets of Normandy, with many others from Normandy and Brittany, laid siege to the strong castle of Becherel, and pressed it hard by their assaults. There were in this castle two able captains from England, sir John Appleyard and sir John Cornwall, who, with their companions, bravely defended themselves: and at this time there were various gallant deeds, sallies, skirmishes, and rescues, performed before Becherel.

Not far distant was the town of St. Sauveur le Vicomte; in which were, sir Thomas Trivet, sir Aleyne Boxhull, sir Philip Pechard, and the three brothers Maulevrier; so that, before the siege of Becherel, these two garrisons over-ran all Lower Normandy, and nothing could escape, but what

---

\* Becherel,—a town in Brittany, two leagues from St. Malo.  
was



was inclosed in forts, from being taken and carried to one or other of these towns. They reformed the bishopricks of Bayeux and Evreux, in which the king of Navarre had connived, and reinforced them with men and provision from the garrisons he held in the county of Evreux.

He was not in good humour with the king of France; insomuch that the garrisons of Cherbourg, Cocherel Conches, Breteuil, Evreux, and several others dependant on the king of Navarre, had much impoverished and ruined the country of Normandy. However, about this period, the differences were accommodated between the two kings, and treaties entered into, through the mediations of the count de Saltzbourg, who had made many visits to each party, and the bishop of Evreux. The two kings met in an amicable manner in the castle of Vernon, when they swore, in the presence of several of the great lords of France, peace, love, amity and alliance henceforward for ever.

The king of Navarre accompanied the king of France to Paris, who shewed him and his companions all manner of respect. The king of Navarre put his territories in Normandy under the government of his brother-in-law the king of France, and left his two sons, Charles and Peter, with the king their uncle. He then affectionately took his leave, and returned to Navarre.

This peace continued for four years; but then great dissensions arose between them, as you will hear in the course of this history, if I should live

to

to finish it: I do not think, however, that it will be concluded in this book.

The 7th day of May 1373, king David of Scotland departed this life in the city of Edinburgh, and was buried in the abbey of Dunfermline, beside Robert the Bruce his father. He left behind him neither male nor female offspring, and was succeeded by his own nephew, Robert the Stewart of Scotland, who was a fine knight, and had eleven sons\*.

---

## CHAP. XLVI.

THE EARL OF SALISBURY, SIR WILLIAM NEVILLE, SIR PHILIP COURTENAY, WITH MANY OTHER MEN AT ARMS, LAND IN BRITANY.—THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE MARCHES THITHER; ON WHICH THE DUKE OF BRITANY GOES TO ENGLAND.

ORDERS were given in England for the earl of Salisbury, sir William Neville and sir Philip Courtenay, to put to sea with a large body of men at arms, to guard the coasts; for it was reported that the Spaniards and Evan of Wales

---

\* Lord Hailes, in his *Annals*, says; ‘David II. died 22d February, 1370-1, in the castle of Edinburgh, in the 47th year of his age and the 42d of his reign. He was buried in the church of the abbey of Holyrood, before the great altar.’

were

were on the seas, with six thousand men, to invade and burn the country.

These lords had under their command forty large ships, without counting sloops, and two thousand men at arms, not including archers. They set sail from Cornwall, where they had embarked for the coasts of Brittany, and, arriving at St. Malo, burnt in the harbour seven large Spanish ships that were lying there. The country was much surprised at this, and said the duke had sent them orders to come thither: they began to suspect his intentions more than ever, and strengthened all their towns, castles and cities.

The duke had placed his confidence in some of the knights of Brittany, who had betrayed his secret, so that the king of France ordered his constable to invade Brittany with a large body of men at arms, and to take possession for him of all cities, towns, castles and fortresses, as well as such persons whom he should find in rebellion, and confiscate their property.

The constable marched from Paris to Angers, and from thence issued his summons. He was there joined by the duke de Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the count du Perche, the count de Porcien, the dauphin d'Auvergne, the viscounts de Meaux and d'Aufnay, sir Raoul de Coucy, Robert de St. Pol, Raoul de Raineval, Louis de Sancerre marshal of France, with numbers of barons and knights from the countries of Vermandois, Artois and Picardy, without counting those from Anjou, Poitou and Touraine.

The

The earl of Salisbury, who was at St. Malo with his army, was informed of this assembly of men at arms, and also that the whole of Brittany was in opposition to the duke. He set sail with his fleet, and bore away until he came to Brest, which has one of the strongest castles in the world.

When the duke of Brittany heard of the march of the constable, he was afraid of trusting himself to the inhabitants of Vannes or Dinan, or indeed to any of his principal towns: he thought if he should shut himself up in any one of them, he would run great risks. He went, therefore, to the castle of Auray, which is situated between Vannes and Rennes, and was attached to him; for he had given the command of it to an English knight, called sir John Austin. The duke left his lady under the care of this knight, entreating him to guard her well, which he promised to do. After this, he rode to St. Mahé; but they shut the gates against him: from thence he went to Concarneau\*, where he embarked for England.

The constable of France entered Brittany, attended by those barons and knights of the country who had been at the siege of Becherel, they having left the continuance of it to the knights and lords of Normandy.

On the arrival of the constable before Rennes, the inhabitants knew that his visit was to take possession of the whole country; for the king and his

---

\* Concarneau,—a sea-port in Brittany, about four leagues from Quimper.

council had published a declaration that the duke had forfeited it, because he had surrendered to the English different towns, castles and forts, and had even wished to take part with the king of England against the crown of France, from which he held his duchy by faith and homage. They were unwilling to incur the horrors of war, and received the constable in a peaceful manner, acknowledging the king of France for their lord.

After the constable had gained possession of Rennes, he hastened to Dinan, which surrendered to the obedience of the king of France. He next advanced to Vannes, which did the same. Luzumont\*, however, held out for the duke; it was roughly assaulted and taken by storm, so that all within were put to death. The constable marched to Jugon, which accepted the terms of the king of France; as did the castle of Goy la Forêt; la Roche-derrien, the towns of Guincamp, St. Mahé, and St. Malo. In like manner, did Quimpercorentin, Quimperlé, Credo, Galande, as well as several other fortresses in the neighbourhood, turn to the French. The constable marched first through Lower Brittany, because it was more attached to duke John de Montfort than the upper parts.

When the duke of Brittany embarked for England, he nominated sir Robert Knolles, governor of the duchy, but very few lords obeyed him. He,

---

\* Probably Sucinio,—a castle near Vannes, which was taken by assault, and the garrison slain. *Hist. de Bretagne.*

however,

however, sufficiently reinforced his castle of Derval with men, and, having provided it with every necessary, gave the command of it to his cousin Hugh Brock. Sir Robert shut himself up in Brest.

The constable came before Hennebon: the governor was an English squire, called Thomelin Ubich\*, nominated by the duke. There was also with him in the castle a knight named sir Thomas Prior, who had been sent thither by sir Robert Knolles; and their garrison might consist of about fourscore men, without counting the inhabitants of the town.

The French, on their arrival, began to make a violent attack on the castle: they always carried with them many large engines and cannons, by means of which they had taken several towns, castles and forts in Brittany: in particular, they had stormed the town of Quimperlé, of which James Rofs, a valiant squire of England, was governor. He could obtain no quarter, for he fell into the hands of sir Oliver de Clifton, who slew him and several others with his own hand: he had no mercy nor pity on any Englishman.

Let us return to the siege of Hennebon. The constable of France, after he had pointed his engines and cannon against the walls of the town and castle, which the lord Charles de Blois could never conquer, ordered all the men at arms to

---

\* Thomelin Ubich. Q. Wich, or Holbeck. Barnes calls him Thomas Wich.

make

make a brisk assault, for he had resolved to sup in the place that evening.

They made a most fierce attack, without sparing themselves; and the inhabitants, assisted by the English, made as gallant a defence. Upon this, the constable called out to them, saying; 'Attend to me, you men of Hennebon: it is quite certain we must conquer you, and that we will sup in your town this evening: if, therefore, any of you be bold enough to throw a stone, arrow, or by any means hurt the smallest of our boys so that he be wounded, I vow to God I will have you all put to death.'

These words so much frightened the inhabitants that they retired to their houses, leaving the English to defend the place as well as they could: but the town was too large for them to guard every part of it, so that the army of the constable entered, and put all the English to death except the two captains, whom they made prisoners. Because the townsmen had obeyed the orders of the constable, he commanded that no one, when they stormed the place, should dare any way to injure them.

When sir Bertrand du Guesclin had thus won the town and strong castle of Hennebon in Brittany, he remained there for fifteen days, and then marched towards Concarneau.

In the mean while, the earl of Salisbury, sir William Neville, sir Brian Stapleton, and sir William Lucy, having reinforced and re-victualled the fort of Brest with men at arms, archers and provisions,

provisions, had embarked on board their ships in order the better to defend it against the French, whom the English knew to be in Brittany, but were uncertain to what quarter the constable would lead them.

The constable on coming before Concarneau, which is a sea-port, took it by storm, and slew all the English, except their captain, sir John Langley, who received quarter. The French repaired the town, and strengthened it with men at arms and all sorts of provision. They then advanced to Brest, in which were sir William Neville and sir Robert Knolles, with two hundred men at arms, and as many archers.

The lords of France and of Brittany laid siege to Brest: they had with them about six thousand combatants. Shortly after they had commenced this siege, the duke of Anjou sent for sir Oliver de Clifton, who had under his command some of his men, to come and lay siege to la Roche sur Yon, which the English still held. Sir Oliver surrounded the place, and pointed against it large engines, which he had brought from Angers and Poitiers.

In company with these Bretons came several nobles and gentlemen of Poitou and Anjou: they kept up a sharp attack, and pressed hard the garison of la Roche sur Yon, saying they would never leave the place before they had conquered it.



The duke of Anjou returned to his own country, but frequently sent provision and other articles to those who were carrying on the siege.

The constable, the duke of Bourbon, the counts d'Alençon and de Perigord, the dauphin d'Auvergne and the great barons of France still maintained the siege of Brest; but too little did they gain, for it is one of the strongest castles in the world. As sir Robert Knolles was the governor, the lords of France resolved to send a body of men to invest his castle of Derval. Many noblemen of Brittany and of Touraine went on this expedition: they were, in the whole, about four hundred fighting men.

---

## CHAP. XLVII.

THE FRENCH BESIEGE FOUR DIFFERENT PLACES.

—LA ROCHE SUR YON SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.—THE SIEGE OF BREST IS RAISED BY A CAPITULATION, WHICH IS NOT KEPT.

THE lords of France were at this time besieging four towns at once; namely, Bachel, Brest, la Roche sur Yon, and the one just formed before, Derval. The besiegers had many an assault to make, and many gallant feats of arms to perform, in order to obtain success.

The

The inhabitants of la Roche sur Yon, being the farthest off from any assistance, and surrounded on all sides, entered into a capitulation, that if they were not succoured within one month, the garrison would march out, and deliver up the castle to the king of France.

The lord de Clifton and the other lords returned at the appointed day; and, when no reinforcements appeared to raise the siege, the castle surrendered, and the English, under the passports of the lord de Pons, marched away for Bourdeaux\*.

After this, sir Oliver de Clifton and the others who had been at this conquest, marched to Derval, whither they had caused large machines and engines to be brought. To this siege of Derval came the constable of France, the duke of Bourbon, the counts d'Alençon and du Perche, with numbers of the knights and barons of France, for they found they were only losing their time before Brest. Two thousand, however, remained behind, who built a block-house in such a situation that no one could enter Brest to reinforce or re-victual it.

Sir Hugh Brock and the garrison in Derval, seeing themselves attacked by such a force, were alarmed lest they should be taken by storm, and proposed a treaty for a truce of two months; and if within that time they were not relieved by the duke of Brittany, or others in sufficient force to keep the field, to raise the siege and to combat the

---

\* My MS. mentions sir Robert Grenacres as governor of la Roche sur Yon.

French, they would surrender themselves and the castle to the duke of Anjou or to the constable: but if a body of men at arms should arrive, and offer battle to the French, the garrison should remain in peace.

This treaty was concluded, and information sent to the duke of Anjou, who was on the borders: he approved of it, on condition that the garrison of Derval should not during the truce receive any one into the castle.

Sir Hugh Brock sent several knights and squires as his hostages for the due execution of the treaty.

After this capitulation, the constable of France made an excursion to the city of Nantes. The citizens shut their gates, because he had with him a large army, and went forth to know his intentions. The constable told them he had been nominated and sent by the king of France, their lord, to take seisin and possession of the duchy of Brittany, which sir John de Montfort, who called himself duke, had forfeited.

The citizens requested time to hold a council, to deliberate on what he had said before they gave an answer. After a long time debating the business, they returned and said to the constable; ‘ Dear lord, it seems quite marvellous to us how the king of France can thus seize the inheritance of our lord the duke; for the king, not long since, commanded us to receive him as our duke. We have therefore sworn fealty and homage to him; and he has in return promised and sworn to govern us as subjects, which he has hitherto punctually done. We have

have never had any grounds for suspecting him of fraud or guile. If you enter this town by virtue of the procuration you say you have, we will allow you so to do; but on condition, that if it should happen that the duke of Brittany return to this country, and be desirous of becoming a good Frenchman, so that all prelates, barons, gentlemen and good towns in Brittany, shall acknowledge him for their lord, we shall be acquitted without loss for what we now do, or may have before done; and that you will not consent to any violence being offered to us, nor will you receive the rents or revenues of Brittany, but they shall remain as a deposit with us until we have other information, or hear news more agreeable to us than what you have brought.'

The constable swore to keep every thing as procurator for the king of France in this case. He and all those who were with him then entered the city of Nantes, which is the principal town in Brittany.

When sir Robert Knolles heard that his cousin, sir Hugh Brock, had concluded a capitulation for the castle of Derval with the French, and found that unless he also entered into a negotiation he could not by any means leave his post to succour it, sir Robert made offers of treating with the French and Bretons, who had remained before Brest: they replied, that they could do nothing without the constable. An English knight and two squires, having had passports, came to a mansion near Nantes, where the constable resided, on the banks

of the Loire, with other knights from France and Brittany.

A treaty was entered into, on these terms; that the garrison of Brest should have a truce for forty days, during which time, unless there should arrive a sufficient force to fight with the constable, the fort was to be surrendered. The garrison was to remain on the same footing it then was, without receiving any reinforcements of men or provision.

The negotiators returned to sir Robert Knolles, who sent, as pledges to the constable, able and sufficient knights and squires. These hostages, on their arrival, were ordered to the prison of the constable; and all those who had been at the siege of Brest departed. The constable gave also leave for several others to go away, whom the king of France sent to garrison his cities, castles, towns, and forts in Picardy, for the duke of Lancaster had landed at Calais with a large army.

When the earl of Salisbury (who had all that season cruised on the coasts of Brittany and Normandy, having for that purpose been reinforced by the king of England, so that he might have on board with him a thousand men at arms and two thousand archers,) heard of the capitulation of Brest, he said, that if it pleased God, he would offer combat to the French. He made sail, and arrived at Brest, which is situated on the sea shore. when he disembarked, and drew up his men in order of battle before Brest: at night, they retreated to their vessels. This he daily performed,  
in

in order to be ready to fight the enemy should they advance to that quarter.

The constable had dismissed the greater part of his men: he had also on his hands, the sieges of Becherel and of Derval, and did not imagine the earl of Salisbury would have arrived on the coast so soon. He set out from near Nantes when the day approached for the surrender of Brest, but did not march quite so far; for he had had intelligence that the English were in sufficient force to fight with him. On hearing this, he halted where he was, and remained there quiet for about seven days, being desirous of having the advice of a full council of war which he had summoned.

The earl of Salisbury had posted himself very advantageously before Brest; and, finding that the constable and Bretons did not advance, he sent a herald to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, who, on his arrival, respectfully saluted him, and said; 'My lord, the earl of Salisbury and the lords of England signify by me, who am a herald at arms and their servant, that as you had for a long time besieged the town and castle of Brest, and certain treaties and capitulations had been entered into for its surrender unless it should be succoured before a certain day, which is not far distant, they wish to inform you that they have encamped themselves before Brest to fulfil this engagement and to defend the castle: they beg and entreat of you, therefore, to advance, when you shall be fought with without fail; and supposing you refuse your consent to this, that you will send back the hostages.'

The constable replied; 'Herald, you bring us agreeable news, and you are welcome. You will tell your masters, that we are more desirous to combat them than they are to meet us; but that they must march to the place where the treaty was first entered into and agreed upon. You will inform them, that if they will advance to that place, they shall infallibly have a battle.'

The herald returned to his masters before Breff, and delivered his message: they sent him back to the constable, to whom he said; 'My lord, I come again from my lords and masters, to whom I repeated the words you charged me with: they say, that as they are only attached to the sea-service they have not brought any horses with them, and are not accustomed to march on foot; for which reason they inform you, that if you will send them your horses, they will come without delay to any place you shall please to appoint, and fight with you.'

'My good friend,' answered the constable, 'we will not, please God, give such advantage to our enemies as we should do were we to send them our horses. It would also be considered as an insult; and, should we think of such a thing, it would be right we should have good and sufficient security to answer for our horses.'

'In truth,' replied the herald, 'they have not charged me to add any thing on this head; only, that if you do not accept their proposition, they say you have not any cause to detain their hostages, and that in returning them you will act but justly.'

The

The constable said, he was not of that opinion.

Thus did the business remain; and the herald returned to the earl of Salisbury and the knights before Brest, who, when they found they could not gain any thing, and that the hostages were not sent back, were exceedingly vexed: they, however, remained steadily before the place, without moving, until the appointed day was passed, and then perceiving the constable would not advance to fight with them, they entered Brest, which they greatly reinforced and re-victualled.

The constable, finding the English were not likely to come to offer him battle, marched off, carrying with him the English hostages as prisoners, and said, the English had not kept what they had bound themselves to perform\*.

After

---

\* My MS. has the following additions:

\* The herald, on receiving his last message, returned to his lords before Brest, who held a council on it.

\* Shortly after this, the constable, the duke of Bourbon, the count d'Alençon, the lords de Clifson and de Laval, with the other barons and knights, amounting to four thousand lances and twenty thousand other men, marched to within one day's journey of Brest, where having strongly encamped themselves, they sent to let the English know they were now on the spot where the treaty had been concluded, and if they would march thither they would be combated; otherwise they would lose their hostages. The earl of Salisbury, on learning this, found the French were trickish and had not any real intention of fighting, so that he returned for answer by his own herald, who accompanied the French herald, that if the constable would advance two-thirds of the way, they would on foot perform the other third;



After the relief of Brest, the earl of Salisbury put to sea to guard the coasts according to the orders he had received. Sir Robert Knolles set out also from Brest, and arrived at his castle of Derval. As soon as this was known, information of it was sent to the duke of Anjou, who was with the constable near Nantes. They guessed what would be the consequence of this; for sir Robert broke all the treaties which his cousin had entered into, and sent to tell the duke of Anjou and the constable, that he should not keep one article of them, as his people had not the power to enter into any treaty without his knowledge and consent. The duke, on hearing this, came in person to the siege of Derval.

---

third; or, if the French would not do this, the English would advance half of the way on foot, if the French would there meet them on foot: or, if the French would not accept either of these propositions, they were bound in justice to return the hostages, for the English had cheerfully and honourably performed their engagement.'

## CHAP XLVIII.

THE DUKE OF LANCASTER LANDS AT CALAIS, AND INVADES PICARDY.—A PART OF HIS ARMY DEFEATED BY THE LORD DE BOURSIEERS\* BEFORE RIBEMONT †.—ANOTHER PART OF HIS ARMY IS DEFEATED NEAR SOISSONS BY AN AMBUSCADE OF BURGUNDIANS AND FRENCH.

UPWARDS of three thousand men at arms and ten thousand English archers had landed at Calais. Three years before, this expedition had been planned and provided for: of course, it was well furnished with all things. The following knights passed over with the dukes of Lancaster and Brittany: the earls of Warwick, Stafford and Suffolk, Edward lord Despencer, first baron of the realm, and at that time constable of the army, the lords Willoughby, de la Pole, Bassett, Roos, Latimer, lord Henry Percy, lord Lewis Clifford, lord William Beauchamp, the canon de Robefart, sir Walter Hewett, sir Hugh Calverley, sir Stephen Cossington, sir Richard de Pontchardon, and many other knights and squires from England; but I cannot name them all.

The king of France, who knew well that the English would cross the sea, had reinforced his ci-

---

\* Denys Sauvage calls him the lord de Soubise, but gives no reason for it. My MSS. have Bourriers.

† Ribemont is a town in Picardy, four leagues from St. Quentin.

ties, towns, castles and forts in Picardy, Artois, and also in Vermandois, and had every where posted men at arms in sufficient numbers; such as Bretons, Burgundians, Picards, Normans, and many whom he had subsidized from the empire.

The English left Calais as soon as they had mounted and arranged their carriages, of which they had great numbers. They marched in three battalions, and in such good order as it was not easy to improve: that of the marshals marched first, of which the earls of Warwick and Suffolk were the leaders; then the dukes of Lancaster and Brittany, who had many gallant knights to accompany them: the constable, the lord Despencer, brought up the rear. They marched in close order, without any one being suffered to quit his rank; and the van was always armed ready for combat. They were quartered together at night, keeping a strong and strict guard to prevent a surprise. They advanced three leagues a-day, and no one dared to march before the banners of the marshals unless he had been ordered forward as a scout.

They passed by Montrieul, of which the lord Handebourg\* was governor, St. Omer, and afterwards Terouenne, but without attacking them. The light troops burnt all the lands of the count de St. Pol, and the army advanced very near to Arras, when the two dukes took up their quarters in the monastery of St. Eloy, and remained there two days.

---

\* Handebourg. Q.

They then marched off by the walls of Arras, but made no assault, for they knew it would be lost time. They came to Bray sur Somme\*, where the two marshals had a sharp engagement before the gates; for there was a good garrison within of able knights and squires of Picardy, under the command of the viscount de Meaux and sir Raoul de Rayneval. The canon de Robefart struck down three with his spear before the gate, and the skirmish was severe; but the French so well defended the gates, that they lost nothing. The English continued their march, following the course of the river Somme, which they thought to cross between Ham, in Vermandois, and St. Quentin. Thus did this army advance under the command of the duke of Lancaster, according to orders from the king his father.

The lord de Bourriers was at this time returning from Hainault into France, and arrived so opportunely at Ham that the inhabitants most earnestly entreated of him to remain there to assist them in defending their town against the English. He complied with their request, staying with them two days, during the time the English passed by, following the course of the river Somme, to enter the Vermandois and to cross the river at the narrowest part.

When the lord de Bourriers heard that the English had almost all passed, and that they were ad-

---

\* Bray sur Somme,—a village of Picardy, election of Peronne.

vancing towards St. Quentin and Ribemont, where the lord du Chin, whose daughter he had married, possessed a large estate, and where he also had lands in right of his wife, he took leave of the citizens of Ham, who thanked him much for his services, as he knew the castle of Ribemont was quite unprovided with men at arms. He was attended by as many companions as he could muster, but they were few in number, and rode on until he came to St. Quentin, where he did not arrive without great danger, for the whole country was overspread with English. He got into the town just in time, for the English light troops came to the gates as he entered them.

The lord de Bourfiers found there sir William des Bourdes, who was governor of it for the king: he was received by him joyfully, and much pressed to stay there, to help him in the defence of the town.

The lord de Bourfiers excused himself by saying, that he had undertaken to go to Ribemont, to defend that town and castle, which was without any garrison; and he entreated sir William so much for assistance that he gave him twelve cross-bows. He had not advanced far before he saw a company of English; but, as he knew the country well, he took a more circuitous road to avoid them: the English never quitted their line of march.

He was this whole day in much peril on his road towards Ribemont. He met a knight from Burgundy, called sir John de Bueil, who was going to St. Quentin; but, after some conversation with the

lord

lord de Bourfiers, he returned with him towards Ribemont. His force might now consist of about forty spears and thirty cross-bows.

As they were approaching Ribemont, having sent forward one of their scouts to inform the inhabitants that they were coming to their aid, they perceived a body of English advancing, who appeared to consist of at least fourscore men on horseback. The French said, 'Here are our enemies returning from pillage: let us meet them.' Upon which they struck spurs into their horses, and galloped off as fast as they could, crying out, 'Nôtre Dame Ribemont:' they fell upon the English, whom they defeated and slew. Happy were they who could escape.

When the French had thus conquered these English, they came to Ribemont, where they found the lord du Chin, who a little before had entered the town with forty spears and twenty cross-bows. Whilst these three noble knights were on the square of the town before the castle, and many of their men had gone to their quarters to disarm themselves, they heard the sentinel on the castle-wall cry out, 'Here are men at arms advancing to the town.' On which they went nearer the castle, and asked how many he thought there might be: he answered, 'About fourscore.' Upon which, the lord de Bourfiers said; 'It behoves us to go and fight with them, for otherwise we shall have much blame in having suffered them thus to come up to our very walls unnoticed.'

The

The lord du Chin replied ; ‘ Fair son, you say well : order out our horses, and display my banner.’ Sir John de Bueil rejoined ; ‘ Gentlemen, you shall not go without my company : but I would advise you to act more deliberately in this business ; for peradventure they may be men at arms lightly mounted, whom the marshals or constable may have sent hither to draw us out of our fortrefs, and our sally may turn out to our loss.’

The lord de Boursiers said ; ‘ If you will adopt my plan, we will go and fight them, and that as speedily as may be ; for, whatever may happen, I am determined to do so.’ On saying this, he fixed on his helmet and tightened his armour, and then sallied forth with about one hundred and twenty combatants. The English were about fourscore, part of the troop of sir Hugh Calverley, though sir Hugh himself had remained with the duke of Lancaster : there were as many as six knights and other squires, who had advanced to revenge the deaths of their companions.

On the French coming out at the gate, they met the English, who lowering their spears, vigorously attacked them : they opened their ranks, when the English galloped quite through : this caused so great a dust that they could scarcely distinguish each other. The French soon formed again, and shouted their cry of ‘ Nôtre Dame Ribemont !’ Many a man was unhorsed on both sides. The lord du Chin fought with a leaden mace, with which he smashed every helmet that came  
within

within reach of it; for he was a strong and lusty knight, well made in all his limbs: but he himself received such a blow on his casque that he reeled, and would have fallen to the ground had he not been supported by his squire. He suffered from this blow as long as he lived.

Several knights and squires of the English were greatly surprised that the arms on the lord du Chin's banners were precisely the same as those of the lord de Coucy, and said, 'How is this? has the lord de Coucy sent any of his men hither? he ought to be one of our friends.' The battle was very mortal; for in the end almost all the English were killed or made prisoners, few escaping. The lord de Bourriers took two brothers of the name of Pembroke; one a knight, the other a squire. Sir John de Beuil took two others, with whom they retreated into Ribemont.

The English army marched by, but made no assault; for they thought it would be losing time. Orders were given to do no damage, by burning or otherwise, to the lands of the lord de Coucy, who was at the time in Lombardy, and interfered not with the wars in France.

The English fixed their quarters in the valleys below Laon and lower down than Bruyeres\* and Crecy†, whence they did much mischief to the Laonnois. But before this, the king of France

---

\* Bruyeres,—a town in Picardy, diocese of Laon.

† Crecy sur Serre,—a town in Picardy, three leagues from Laon.



had ordered every thing valuable to be carried into the towns and strong places, which were so well garrisoned that the English could not gain any thing by attacking them, nor indeed had they any thoughts of so doing, but were only anxious that the French would meet them in battle in the plain. The king, however, had forbidden this very strictly in his daily orders. He had them followed by the rest of his cavalry so close on their rear, as to intimidate them from quitting the main army. The French took up their quarters every evening in fortified towns, and in the day-time pursued the English, who kept themselves in a compact body.

It happened that one morning a party of English to the number of six score lances, who were over-running the country beyond Soissons, fell into an ambuscade of Burgundians and French. It was commanded by sir John de Vienne, sir John de Bueil, sir William des Bourdes, sir Hugh de Porcien, sir John de Coucy, the viscount de Meaux, the lords de Rayneval and de la Boue, with several more knights and squires, amounting in the whole to full three hundred lances. They had followed the English, and this night they had encamped in the fields of the Soissonnois, where they had placed an ambuscade in a small coppice. The English came in the morning to plunder a village behind which their army was quartered. When they had passed the ambush, the French sallied forth with banners and pennons displayed. The English, seeing such a large body so near them,

them, halted, and would have sent to their army, which was a good league off: but sir Walter Huet, a great English captain, and near the spot where this surprise happened, mounting his horse in great haste, his lance in its rest, but without helmet or vizor, and only his coat of mail on, galloped forward without further thought or consideration: his men followed him as well as they could. In the confusion, he had his neck quite pierced through with a spear, and fell dead on the field.

The English fought very valiantly, but at last were almost all taken or slain. The French made prisoners of the following knights: sir Matthew Redmayne, sir Thomas Fowkes, sir Hugh Brudenel, sir Thomas Spencer, sir Thomas Emerton, sir Nicholas Gascoign, sir John Chandler, sir Philip Cambray, sir John Harpedon, sir Matthew Gournay, sir Robert Twyford, sir Geoffry Say, sir John Bouchier, sir Geoffry Worley, sir Lionel Daultry; and, of esquires, William Daultry, John Gaillard, Thomas Bradley, Henry Montford, Guy Hewett, John Meynil, William Gostwick, John Flamstead, Thomas Solterant, William Quentin, Robert Boteler, Robert Audley, Ralph Stanley, and Thomas Archer\*.

News was carried to the main body, that their men were engaged: upon which, the marshals, with the whole army, hastened thither: though they could not make such speed but that the busi-

---

\* I have copied these names from Barnes.

ness was finished, and the Burgundians and French had left the field.

The English knew not where to seek the French.

Thus passed this action, according to the information I have received, near to Soucy in the Soissonnois, the 20th September, 1363.

After these two encounters at Ribemont and Soucy, nothing further befel the duke of Lancaster and his army that is worth mentioning. They marched through various narrow passes and defiles, but kept in close and good order. The council of the king of France therefore said to him; 'Let them go: by their smoke alone they cannot deprive you of your kingdom: they will be tired soon, and their force will dissolve away; for as storms and tempests appear sometimes in tremendous forms over a whole country, yet they dissipate of themselves, and no essential harm happens, thus will it befall these English.'

## CHAP. XLIX.

THE HOSTAGES SENT FROM Derval ARE BE-  
HEADED.—SIR ROBERT KNOLLES RETALIATES  
ON THOSE PRISONERS WHOM HE HAD TAKEN.  
—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER FINISHES HIS  
EXPEDITION.

**S**IR Robert, Knolles, as I have before related, was returned to his castle of Derval, which he considered as his own inheritance, and had determined to break the treaty which had been entered into by his cousin and the duke of Anjou: on which account, the duke himself was come to the siege of Derval, attended by numbers from Brittany, Poitou and the lower countries.

The king of France was desirous that his constable, who was there, and the lord de Clifson, with several more, should return to France, to assist his brother the duke of Burgundy in the pursuit of the English. He frequently renewed these orders to the different lords, who were anxious to obey them, and also to gain possession of this castle of Derval.

When the day was passed on which the castle was to have been surrendered, the besiegers wondered what the garrison were thinking on: they imagined that sir Robert Knolles had thrown himself into it

with reinforcements. The duke and constable sent to sir Robert, and to sir Hugh Broc who had made the treaty.

The herald, on arriving in the square of the castle, said to the gentlemen present; 'My lords send me here to enquire from you the reasons, which they would willingly learn, why you do not ransom your hostages by surrendering the castle according to the terms of the treaty to which you, sir Hugh, have sworn.

Sir Robert Knolles then addressed the herald, saying; 'Herald, you will tell your masters, that my cousin had no authority to enter into any capitulation or treaty without my consent first had; and you will now return with this answer from me.'

The herald went back to his lords, and related to them the message sir Robert Knolles had charged him with: they sent him again to tell the garrison, that from the tenor of the treaty, they ought not to have received any one into the fort, and that they had received Sir Robert Knolles, which they should not have done; and likewise to inform them for a truth, that if the castle was not surrendered, the hostages would be beheaded.

Sir Robert replied; 'By God, herald, I will not lose my castle for fear of the menaces of your lords; and if it should happen that the duke of Anjou, through arrogance, puts my friends to death, I will retaliate; for I have here in prison several knights and squires of France, and if I were offered one hundred thousand francs I would not shew mercy to any one of them.'

When

When the herald had delivered this answer, the duke of Anjou sent for the headsman, and ordered the hostages, who were two knights and a squire, to be brought forth, and had them beheaded before the castle, so that those within might see and know them.

Sir Robert Knolles instantly ordered a table to be fixed without side of the windows of the castle, and had led there four of his prisoners, three knights and a squire, for whom he might have had a great ransom, but he had them beheaded and flung down into the ditch, the heads on one side and the bodies on the other.

The siege was raised after this, and all the men at arms returned to France; even the duke of Anjou went to Paris to visit the king his brother: the constable, with the lord de Clisson and others, marched to the city of Troyes, for the English were already in that part of the country: they had crossed the river Marne, and were taking the road towards Auxerre.

At this time, pope Gregory XI. had sent the archbishop of Rouen and the bishop of Carpentras in legation to France, to endeavour, if possible, to make peace between the kings of France and England: these two prelates had many difficulties in travelling towards the king of France and his brothers, and afterwards to the duke of Lancaster: the English, however, kept advancing through the country of Fôrets, having passed Auvergne, Limousin, and the rivers Loire, Allier, Dordonne, and Lot. Neither the English

nor French were much at their ease in this expedition: three knights of Hainault, sir Fateres de Berlamont, sir Bridol de Montagin, and le bègue de Warlan, as well as some on the side of the English, died on their march.

The dukes of Lancaster and Brittany continued their route with the army until they were arrived at Bergerac, four leagues from Bourdeaux, continually pursued by the French.

The duke of Anjou and the constable of France were in the upper countries near Rouergue, Rodais, and Toulouse, and had advanced as far as Perigueux, where they had fixed their quarters.

The two before-mentioned prelates journeyed from each party, preaching to them several reasons why they should come to an agreement. But each held so obstinately to his own opinion that they would not make any concessions, without having considerable advantages given them.

The duke of Lancaster came to Bourdeaux about Christmas; and the two dukes remained there the whole winter and the following Lent. Several knights went away, on the expedition being finished: the lord Basset and his company returned to England, for which king Edward reprimanded him.

## CHAP. L.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU'S CAMPAIGN INTO UPPER  
GASCONY\*.

SOON after Easter, in the year 1374, the duke of Anjou, who resided at Perigord, made a great muster of his forces; at which the constable of France and the greater part of the barons and knights of Brittany, Poitou, Anjou, Touraine, were present. There were also, from Gascony, sir John d'Armagnac, the lords d'Albret and de Perigord, the counts de Comminges and de Narbonne, the viscounts de Caraman, de Vilemure and de Thalar, the count dauphin d'Auvergne: most of the lords of Auvergne and of Limousin: the viscount de Minedon, the lords de la Barde and de Pincornet, and sir Bertrand de Charde. They amounted to fifteen thousand men on foot, and a large body of Genoese and crossbows. They began their march towards upper Gascony, and came before St. Silviert†, of which an abbot was lord. Notwithstanding it was talked of as a strong town, the abbot was afraid of losing it by force; so that he began to treat with the duke of Anjou, telling him that neither himself

---

\* For a more chronological account of this campaign, see the hist. de Languedoc, vol. iv. p. 580.

† St. Silvier. Probably St. Sever de Rustan, in Bigorre.



nor his territories wished to wage war against him, or in any way incur his indignation, and that the strength of his town and all he could bring to defend it were as nothing in comparison with the towns and castles of upper Gascony, whither, it was supposed, he intended to march. He therefore entreated that he might remain in peace, upon the terms that he should observe an exact neutrality; and that, whatever those lords of Gascony who possessed mesne fiefs should do, he would do the same. His request was granted, on his giving hostages, who were sent to prison in Perigueux.

The whole army, of which the duke of Anjou was commander, marched away towards Montmarsen\*, and the town of Lourde† in upper Gascony, of which sir Arnold de Vire was governor. The French besieged and surrounded it on all sides, having first demanded if they were willing to surrender themselves to the duke of Anjou. The inhabitants of Lourde soon agreed to it; but the knight said, that the count de Foix had appointed him to that post, and he would not surrender it to any man except to him.

When the constable of France heard this, he ordered the army to advance and briskly assault it, which they did with so much vigour that the town was taken and the governor slain, as well as several men and women: the town was pillaged and ruined,

---

\* Montmarsen,—a town in Gascony.

† Lourde,—a town in Gascony,—the capital of the valley of Lavedan, diocese of Tarbes.

and left in that state : however, on their departure they placed therein some of their men.

The French entered the lands \* of Châtel-bon, which they despoiled ; they then passed through the territories of Châtel-neuf, which they attacked, and continued their march upwards towards Bierne, and came to the entrance of the lands of the lord de l'Escut : they advanced until they came to a good town and strong castle, called Sault †, which was dependant on the county of Foix.

The prince of Wales had frequently intended, before his expedition to Spain, to make war on the count de Foix for all these mesne fiefs, which he had in Gascony, because the count would not acknowledge that he held them from him : the affair had remained in this situation in consequence of the Spanish expedition. Now, however, the duke of Anjou, who was conquering all Aquitaine, seemed willing to take possession of it, and had thus besieged Sault in Gascony, which was not a trifle nor easy to gain : the governor of it was sir William de Pau.

When the count heard they were conquering his lands and the mesne fiefs, for which it was but just he should pay homage either to the kings of France or England, he sent for the viscount de

---

\* These lands are beyond the Pyrenées : therefore, it more probably alludes to the town of Mauvoisin and the other lands the viscount held under the king of England.—See Hist. de Languedoc, vol. iv. p. 583.

† Sault de Navaille,—a small town in Gascony, near Orthez.

Châtel-Bon, the lords de Marsen and de l'Escut, and the abbot de St. Silvier. He then demanded a passport from the duke of Anjou, who was occupied with the siege of Sault, that they might wait upon him in safety: the duke granted it. They therefore went and held a conference with him and his council, when it was agreed that the aforesaid lords and their territories should remain in peace until the middle of August, on condition that those who should then be the strongest before the town of Monfac \* on the part of the kings of France or of England, and there keep the field, should have the enjoyment of these rights, and to that party these lords of meshe fiefs should ever after belong: The count de Foix and the other lords gave hostages for their due performance of this agreement. The duke of Anjou returned to Perigueux with his army, but did not dismiss any one.

---

\* A town in Perigord, near Bergerac.

## CHAP. LL.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE AND HIS COMPANIONS  
ARE RANSOMED.—A SHORT TRUCE BETWEEN  
THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.—BECHEREL SUR-  
RENDERS ON TERMS.—THE DEATH OF THE  
EARL OF PEMBROKE.

**A**BOUT this time there was an exchange made of the lands of the constable of France and sir Oliver de Mauny, which the king of Spain had given to them for their gallant services. The constable exchanged his estate of Soria in Castille for the earl of Pembroke, who had been made prisoner off la Rochelle. Sir Oliver de Mauny gave up his estate of Grette for sir Guiscard d'Angle and his nephew William, Otho de Grantson, John de Grinieres and the lord de Tannaybouton.

Whilst this treaty was going forward, another was opened between the dukes of Anjou and of Lancaster, through the means of the two before mentioned prelates. The duke of Lancaster sent, under passports, to the duke of Anjou at Perigord, (where he resided and governed as king or regent the lordships of England and France,) the canon de Robefart, and the lords William Hellunay and Thomas Douville. A truce was agreed on, between these dukes and their allies, until the last day of August; and they engaged themselves to be, in the month of September, in the country of Picardy,—

Picardy,—the duke of Anjou at St. Omer, and the duke of Lancafter at Calais.

After this truce, the dukes of Lancafter and of Brittany, the earls of Warwick, Suffolk and Stafford, the lords de Spencer and Willoughby, the canon de Robesart, lord Henry Percy, the lord Manne \*, with the other lords and knights, fet out from Bourdeaux the 8th day of July, and returned to England.

Sir John Appleyard and fir John Cornewall held their castle of Bechérel for nearly a year againft the French, who were clofely befiegiug it, and had much constrained them; but not receiving any intelligence of succours coming to their affiftance, and their provisions beginning to fail, they held a council whether it would not be advifable to offer terms for its furrender. They entered, therefore, into a treaty with the lords d'Hambuye, d'Eftonville, de Blainville, de Frainville, and the barons of Normandy, who were quite tired with the fiege having continued fo long. But they would not conclude any thing without the knowledge of the king of France. He confented, that if the duke of Brittany in perfon did not come in fufficient force before Becherel, by All Saints-day next approaching, to raife the fiege, the garrifon fhould furrender on capitulation. Hoftages were given to obferve thefe terms.

The earl of Pembroke was ranfomed for 120,000 francs, which the Lombards of Bruges agreed to

---

\* Q. Maine.

pay when he should be arrived in good health at Bruges. The earl journeyed, under the passport of the constable, through the kingdom of France : but a fever, or some other sickness, overtook him on the road, so that he was obliged to travel in a litter unto the city of Arras, where his disorder increased so much as to occasion his death. The constable, by this event, lost his ransom\*. 376

The earl of Pembroke left by his second wife, the lady Anne, daughter of sir Walter Manny, a fair son, who at that time was two years old.

Sir Guiscard d'Angle obtained his ransom, as you shall hear. You remember that the lord de Roye remained prisoner in England : he had an only daughter, a great heiress. The friends of the lord de Roye entered into an agreement with sir Oliver de Mauny, a Breton knight, and nephew to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, that if he could deliver the lord de Roye from his prison by means of an exchange, he should have the daughter of the baron de Roye for his wife, who was of very high birth.

Upon this, sir Oliver de Mauny sent to the king of England, to know which of the knights he would wish to have] set at liberty for the lord de Roye. The king was most inclined for sir Guiscard d'Angle. The lord de Roye was therefore

---

\* The constable carried on, for three years, a fruitless lawsuit with the Flemish merchants for this ransom, which they refused to pay. He at length gave up his claim to the king of France for 50,000 Francs.—*Hist. de Bretagne.*

sent home free, and the lord de Mauny espoused his daughter.

Shortly afterwards, the lord de Roye himself married the daughter of the lord de Ville and de Floron in Hainault.

The other knights, that is to say, the lord de Tannaybouton, sir Otho de Grantson, and sir John de Grinieres obtained their liberties, and compounded in a handsome manner for their ransom with sir Oliver de Mauny.

## CHAP. LII.

SEVERAL TOWNS IN GASCONY SURRENDER TO THE KING OF FRANCE.—SIR HUGH DE CHASTILLON RETURNS FROM PRISON.—THE CASTLE OF BECHEREL SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.

WHEN the middle of August approached, which was the appointed time for the meeting before Monfac, the duke of Anjou arrived with a grand array of men at arms. He fixed his quarters in the plain before Monfac, where he was lodged for six days without any one coming to meet him. The English thought that the truce which had been entered into would have annulled this agreement. But the duke of Anjou and his council did not consider it in this light. Sir Thomas Felton,

Felton, *sénéchal* of Bourdeaux, - argued the matter for a long time ; but he could not gain any thing.

The duke, therefore, sent to the count de Foix, the viscount de Châtel Bon, to the lords de Marsen, de Châteauneuf, de l'Escut, and to the abbot de St. Silvier, to summon them to keep their agreements, or he would put to death their hostages, and enter their lands in such a manner as would oblige them to throw themselves on his mercy.

These lords, therefore, placed themselves and their lands under the obedience of the king of France. The inhabitants of Monfac opened their gates, and presented the keys to the duke of Anjou, doing to him fealty and homage. The lords who attended the duke entered the town with him, where they remained for eighteen days ; during which time they held councils as to what part they should next march.

Shortly after the middle of August, when the truces which had been entered into between the English and French in Gascony were expired, these lords recommenced the war. The duke of Anjou, came before la Réole\* ; and, after three days siege, the inhabitants submitted to the king of France. From thence he marched to Langon†, which also

\* La Réole,—a town in Bazadois, eighteen leagues and a half from Bourdeaux.

† Langon,—a town in Bazadois, six leagues from Bourdeaux.



surrendered; as did St. Macaire\*, Condom†, Bafille‡, la Tour de Prudenec, Meuléron§ and la Tour de Drou. Full forty towns and castles turned to the French in this expedition: the last was Auberoche¶. The duke of Anjou placed in all of them men at arms and garrisons; and, when he had arranged every thing according to his pleasure, he and the constable returned to Paris, for the king had sent for them.

He dismissed, therefore, the greater part of his army: and the lords de Clifton, de Beaumanoir, d'Avaugour, de Ray, de Riom, the viscounts de la Val, de Rohan, and the other barons, returned to the siege of Becherel, to be ready at the time appointed; for it was reported that the duke of Brittany, sir Robert Knolles and the lord de Spencer would attempt to raise the siege.

You have before heard how sir Hugh de Châtillon, master of the cross bows, had been made prisoner near Abbeville, by sir Nicholas Louvain, and carried into England: he was unable to obtain his liberty on account of the large sum asked for his ransom: however, a flemish merchant stepped forward, and exerted himself so effectually that he

\* St. Macaire,—nine leagues from Bourdeaux.

† Condom, a city of Gascony, four leagues from the Garonne.

‡ Bafille. Not in Gazetteer.

§ Meuléron, a town in Armagnac, diocese Aire.

¶ Auberoche,—a town in Perigord near Perigueux.

cunningly

cunningly got him out of England. It would take too much time to enter into the whole detail of this business: therefore, I shall pass it over.

When he was returned to France, the king gave him back his office of master of the cross-bows, and sent him to Abbeville, as he had before done, to guard that frontier, with two hundred lances under his command. All the captains of castles and towns were ordered to obey him; such as sir John de Berthouilliers governor of Boulogne, sir Henry des Isles governor of Dieppe; and those who commanded in the frontier towns of Terrouenne, St. Omer, Liques, Fiennes and Montroye.

It happened that the lord de Gommegines, governor of Ardres, and sir John d'Ubrues, collected their forces in Ardres, to the amount of about eight hundred lances. They marched, one morning early, well mounted, towards Boulogne, to see if they should meet with any adventures.

That same morning, sir John de Berthouilliers, governor of Boulogne, had also made an excursion, with about sixty lances, towards Calais, and with the same intent. On his return, he was met by the lord de Gommegines and his party, who immediately charged the French, and overthrew them, so that their captain saved himself with great difficulty, but lost fourteen of his lancemen. The lord de Gommegines, after the pursuit, returned to Ardres.

The master of the cross-bows this day made a  
S 2 muster

muster of his forces : he had with him a great number of men at arms from Artois, Vermandois, and from that neighbourhood : in all, upwards of three hundred lances.

The count de St. Pol, who had lately come to Picardy from his estates in Lorraine, was on his road to fulfil a pilgrimage to our Lady of Boulogne : he was informed on his way, that the master of the cross-bows was about to undertake an excursion, which made him wish to be of the party : they therefore rode together, and advanced before Ardres, where they remained drawn up for some time ; but they knew nothing of the English being abroad, nor the English of them.

After the French had continued some time before Ardres, and saw that none attempted to sally from the town, they began their retreat towards the abbey of Liques. No sooner had they marched away than an Englishman privately left the place, and rode through lanes and cross-roads (for he knew the country well) until he met the lord de Gommegines and his party returning to Ardres, who, when he learnt the expedition of the French, slowly advanced with his men in a compact body.

When the French had passed Tournehem, having also had intelligence of the English being abroad under the command of the governor of Ardres, they immediately marched towards them, and placed an ambuscade in a coppice, above Liques, of three hundred lances, of which sir Hugh de Châtillon

Châtillon was the captain. The young count de St. Pol was ordered forward on the look-out, and with him went many knights and squires.

Not far distant, by the side of a large hedge, the lord de Gommegines and sir Walter Ukeues\* had halted, and drawn up their force on foot in a very handsome manner. Sir John Harlestone set off on a gallop, with twenty lances, to entice the French into this ambuscade, saying he would allow himself to be pursued to the place where they were: he therefore entered the plain.

The young count de St. Pol, who was arrived thither with a hundred lances, spying sir John Harlestone's troop, called out to his companions, 'Forward, forward! here are our enemies.' Upon which they stuck spurs into their horses, and hastened as fast as they could to come up with the English. But sir John Harlestone began his retreat, allowing them to pursue him until he came to the hedge where the English were drawn up, with their archers in front.

On the arrival of the French, the English received them with battle-axes, swords and spears: the archers began so brisk an attack that men and horses were overthrown. Many gallant deeds were done; but in the end the French were surrounded, and the greater part slain. The young count de St. Pol was made prisoner by a squire of Gueldres: the lords de Pons and de Clary, sir William de

---

\* He is before called sir John d'Ubruues.

Nielle, sir Charles de Châtillon, Leonnet d'Araines, Guy de Vaifnel, Henry des Isles and John his brother, the châtelain de Beauvais and several other knights and squires were also captured.

Shortly after this defeat, the lord de Châtillon came, with his banner and three hundred lances, to the path of the hedge; but, when he saw that his men were defeated, he wheeled about with his troops, and returned without striking a blow: upon this, the English and Hainaulters led their prisoners to the town of Ardres.

The lord de Gommegines, that evening, bought the count de St. Pol from the squire who had taken him: he soon after carried him to England, and presented him to the king, who thanked him kindly for so doing, and made him great presents.

When the duke of Anjou and the constable were returned to Paris from Gascony, they found the archbishop of Rouen and the bishop of Carpentras had been some time with the king. These prelates continued their journey, and arrived at St. Omer. The duke of Lancaster and the lord Bacinier had crossed the sea to Calais, and from thence went to Bruges. The duke of Anjou soon after came to St. Omer in grand array, and sent for his cousin sir Guy de Blois to meet him, who left Hainault handsomely equipped to wait on the duke.

The constable of France, the lords de Clifton, de la Val, and sir Oliver de Maunny, with upwards of six hundred lances, had posted themselves on  
the

the frontiers between France and Flanders, near to Aire, la Croix, Bailleul, Cassel, and in that neighbourhood, to guard the country, and to prevent any injury being offered to the count of Flanders; for he had not any great confidence in the negotiators, nor would he go to Bruges notwithstanding their earnest solicitations.

You have before heard how the garrison of Becherel had held out for upwards of a year, and had entered into a capitulation to surrender, if they were not relieved before All-saints-day. When the day was near approaching, the king of France ordered thither many men at arms; and all the knights of Brittany and Normandy were entreated to be there, except such as were with the constable. The two marshals of France, the lord Louis de Sancerre and Lord Mouton de Blainville, the earl of Harcourt, sir James de Vienne admiral of France, the dauphin of Auvergne, sir John de Bueil and several more arrived before Becherel. These lords kept the day with great solemnity; but as none appeared to relieve the castle, it was surrendered, and those who were so inclined left it. Sir John Appleyard and sir John Cornwall marched out with their men, embarked and crossed over to England. The barons of France took possession of the place, which they repaired, re-victualled and reinforced with men, provision and artillery.

By orders from the king of France, these men at arms shortly after laid siege to St. Sauveur le

Vicomte in Coutantin, which had belonged to sir John Chandos; and after his death the king of England had given it to sir Aleyne Boxhull, who at that time was in England: he had left there as governor a squire called Carenton\*, with sir Thomas Cornet, John de Burgh, and the three brothers Maulevriers: there might be with them about six score companions, all armed and ready for defence. St. Sauveur was first besieged on the side next the sea by sir John de Vienne admiral of France, with all the barons and knights of Brittany and Normandy. There was also a large army before it, with plenty of every thing. These lords of France had pointed large engines against it, which much harrassed the garrison.

---

\* Probably Carrington.

## CHAP. LIII.

A TRUCE AGREED ON AT BRUGES BETWEEN THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—THE DUKE OF BRITTANY RETIRES TO HIS OWN COUNTRY, AND REGAINS SOME OF HIS TOWNS AND CASTLES.

WE will now return to the noble negotiators at Bruges, that is to say, the dukes of Anjou\* and Burgundy, the count de Saltzbourg, the bishop of Amiens, the elected bishop of Bayeux; the duke of Lancaster, the earl of Salisbury and the bishop of London†. In order that no harm might happen to these Lords, nor to their people, who were going from one to the other, it was agreed there should be a truce, to last to the first of May 1375, in all the country between Calais and the river Somme; but that it should not interfere with the other parts of the country now at war. Upon this being done, the lords de Clifson and de la

---

\* The historian of Languedoc says, the duke of Anjou was not present at this meeting, but in Avignon; and that, when the treaty was concluded, the duke of Burgundy sent from Bruges orders for the sénéchal of Beaucaire to publish it.—Vol. iv. p. 357.

Passports were, however, granted to the duke of Anjou, by Edward, to come to Bruges.—RYMER.

† In addition, there were, sir John Cobham, sir Frank van Hall, sir Arnold Savage, and master John Shepewe and master Simon Multon, doctors of laws.—See their warrant in Rymer.



Val were sent back to Brittany with their forces, to assist in guarding that country and the neighbouring frontiers.

During the time these negotiations were going forward at Bruges, the duke of Brittany, as has been before said, remained in England, where he felt much for the distress of his country, the greater part of which had turned against him : his duchess also was besieged and shut up in the castle of Auray. The duke, while he resided with the king of England, was very melancholy : upon which the king, who much loved him, said ; ' Fair son, I well know that through your affection to me, you have put into the balance, and risked, a handsome and noble inheritance : but be assured that I will recover it for you again, for I will never make peace with the French without your being reinstated. On hearing these fine promises, the duke bowed respectfully to the king and humbly thanked him.

Soon after this conversation, the duke of Brittany assembled at Southampton two thousand men at arms and three thousand archers, who all received their pay for half a year in advance, by orders from the king of England\*.

---

\* Edward nominated the earl of Cambridge conjointly with the duke of Brittany his lieutenants in France, with full powers to act as they pleased, without prejudice to the rights of the duke or to the patrimony of the church, dated 24th November 1374.—See Rymer.

Among

Among the commanders were the earls of Cambridge and March, the lord de Spencer, sir Thomas Holland, sir Nicholas Camoire, sir Edward Twiford, sir Richard de Pontchardon, sir John Lesley, sir Thomas Grantson, sir Hugh Hastings, the lords de Manne \* and de la Pole, with many other knights and squires.

The duke and all his men at arms arrived at St. Matthieu de Fine Pôterne in Brittany, where, after they had disembarked, they attacked the castle very sharply. This castle was out of the town, and ill supplied with men and artillery, so that the English took it by storm, and slew all who were in it. When the inhabitants of the town, were informed of this, they opened their gates, and received the duke as their lord.

The English next advanced to the town of St. Pol de Léon, which was strong and well inclosed. The duke took his station; and, during a marvellously well conducted attack, the archers, who were posted on the banks of the ditches, shot so excellently, and so much together, that scarcely any dared appear to defend them: the town was therefore taken and pillaged.

After this, they came before St. Brieu, which at that time was well provided with men at arms and all other provisions and stores; for the lords de Clifson, de Beaumanoir, the viscount de Rohan, and many other barons of Brittany, whose quarters were at Lamballe, had lately been there and had

---

\* Q. Maine.

reinforced

reinforced it with every thing necessary. The duke and the English besieged this town.

When the garrison of St. Sauveur le Vicomte heard that the duke of Brittany and the English lords were arrived in Brittany, they expected them to come and raise their siege; which they much desired, for they were greatly straitened by the engines, which day and night cast stones into the castle, so that they knew not where to retire to avoid them. Having called a council, they resolved to make overtures to the French lords, to obtain a truce for six weeks, until Easter 1375; and proposed, that if within that time there should not come any relief, which might be sufficient to offer battle and raise the siege, they would surrender themselves, their lives and fortunes being spared, and the fortrefs should be given up to the king of France. This treaty went off, and the siege continued; but no harm was further done to those of St. Sauveur, for the besiegers and garrison were both inactive.

## CHAP. LIV.

SOME BRETON LORDS OF THE FRENCH PARTY ARE  
NEAR BEING TAKEN BY THE DUKE OF BRIT-  
TANY, BUT ARE DELIVERED BY THE TRUCES  
AT BRUGES.

THE viscount de Rohan, the lords de Clifton and de Beaumanoir were guarding the frontiers against the duke of Brittany and the English, at that time before St. Brieu. Sir John Devereux was then quartered near to Quimperlé, and was destroying that part of the country: he had caused to be repaired and fortified by the peasants a small fort which he had made his garrison, and called it the New Fort, in which he resided, so that none could venture out of the town without risk of being taken. This information the townsmen of Quimperlé sent to the lord de Clifton and the other lords at Lamballe.

They marched immediately thither, leaving a sufficiency of men to guard that town, and rode on until they came before this new fort, which they surrounded. News of this was carried to the British army before St. Brieu. The duke had ordered a mine to be sprung, which they had worked at for fifteen days; but at that moment the miners had lost their point, so that it was necessary for them to begin another: which when the duke and the lords of his army heard, they said among themselves;

selves; ' Every thing considered, we are but losing time here: let us go to the assistance of sir John Devereux, and if we shall be able to fall in with those who are besieging him in the open field, we shall perform a good exploit. Upon this, they held a council, and marched off, taking the road for the new fort, which the lords of Brittany were then assailing. They had done so much that they were already at the foot of the walls, and dreaded not what might be thrown down upon them; for they were well shielded, but those within the fort had not wherewithal to annoy them in that manner.

Just at this instant, a scout came with speed to the lords of Brittany who were busy at the assault, saying, ' My lords, make off in haste from hence; for the English are coming with the duke of Brittany, and they are not more than two leagues off.' The trumpet sounded a retreat: they collected themselves together, called for their horses, set off, and entered Quimperlé which was hard by. They closed the gates; but scarcely had they raised the draw-bridges, and strengthened the barriers, when the duke of Brittany with the barons of England were before it. They had passed by the new fort, and spoken with sir John Devereux, who thanked them exceedingly for coming, otherwise he must have been very shortly made prisoner.

The duke and the English formed the siege of Quimperlé, and ordered their archers and foot soldiers, well shielded, to advance, when a sharp attack commenced; for the English, as well as those

those in the town were very determined; so that there were many wounded on both sides. Every day there were such skirmishes and assaults that those in the town saw they should not be able to hold out much longer, and there did not seem any likelihood of their receiving assistance. They could not escape any way without being seen, so well was the town surrounded; and if they should be taken by storm, they doubted if they should receive any quarter, more especially the lord de Clifton, for he was much hated by the English.

These lords of Brittany opened a treaty with the duke to surrender; but they wanted to depart on a moderate ransom, and the duke would have them surrender unconditionally; they could only obtain a respite for eight days, and that with very great difficulty. This respite, however, turned out very fortunate to them; for during that time two English knights, sir Nicholas Carswell and sir Walter Ourswick\*, sent by the duke of Lancaster from Bruges, where he had remained the whole winter, arrived at the army of the duke of Brittany. They brought with them deeds engrossed and sealed of the truces entered into between the kings of France and England. The duke of Lancaster sent orders, that in consequence of the treaty of Bruges, the army should be disbanded without delay. The truce was immediately read and proclaimed through the army, and signified also to those who were within Quimperlé.

---

\* Sir Nicholas Charnels—sir Walter Urswick.—BARNES.

The lords de Clifson, de Rohan and de Beaumanoir, and the others, were much rejoiced thereat, for it came very opportunely.

The siege of Quimperlé being raised, the duke of Brittany disbanded all his troops, except those of his household, and went to Auray, where his duchess was. The earls of Cambridge and of March, sir Thomas Holland earl of Kent, the lord de Spencer and the other English returned home.

When the duke of Brittany had settled his affairs at his leisure, and had reinforced the towns and castles of Brest and Auray with artillery and provisions, he set out from Brittany with his duchess, and went for England.

## CHAP. LV.

ST. SAUVEUR LE VICOMTE SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.—THE LORD DE COUCY LEADS A LARGE ARMY INTO AUSTRIA, WHICH HE CLAIMS AS HIS INHERITANCE.

ON the day in which the truces were concluded at Bruges between the kings of France and of England, to last for one whole year, including their allies, the dukes of Lancaster and Burgundy again swore they would return thither on All-saint day. Each party was to keep, during this truce, whatever

whatever he was then in possession of. The English thought that the capitulation respecting St. Sauveur le Vicomte would be voided by this treaty ; but the French would not allow of this, and said the treaty did not affect the prior engagement concerning it : so that, when the day arrived for its surrender, the king of France sent troops thither from all quarters. There were assembled before it upwards of six thousand knights and squires, without counting the others : but no succour came to its relief, and when the day was expired, St. Sauveur was given up to the French, but most unwillingly, for the fortrefs was very convenient for the English.

The governor sir Thomas Cornet, John de Burgh, the three brothers Maulevriers, and the English, went to Carentan, where having embarked all which belonged to them, they sailed for England\*.

The constable of France reinforced the town and castle of St. Sauveur le Vicomte with a new garrison, and appointed a Breton knight as governor. I heard at the time, that the king of France gave him the lordship of it.

---

\* Froissart has forgotten to add sir Thomas Carington among the governors of St. Sauveur le Vicomte. Nothing was said against him until the reign of Richard II. when he was accused of having treacherously given up this place by sir John Annesley, who had married sir John Chandos' niece : he challenged him to single combat, fought and vanquished him in the lists, formed in Palace yard in the presence of the king. He was afterwards drawn to Tyburn, and there hanged for his treason.--See Dugdale, Fabian, &c.



The lord de Coucy at this period returned to France: he had been a long time in Lombardy with the count de Vertus \*, son of the lord Galeas Visconti, and had made war on lord Bernabo Visconti and his allies, for the cause of the church and of Gregory XI. who at that time was pope, and for the holy college of Rome.

The lord de Coucy, in right of succession to the lady his mother, who was sister to the duke of Austria last deceased, was the true heir of that duchy. The last duke did not leave any child by legal marriage, and the inhabitants of Austria had disposed of the estate in favour of a relation, but farther removed than the lord de Coucy. This lord had frequently complained of such conduct to the emperor, the lord Charles of Bohemia.

The emperor readily acknowledged the lord de Coucy's right; but he could not compel the Austrians to do the same, who were in great force in their own country, and had plenty of men at arms. The lord de Coucy had gallantly carried on the war against them several times, through the aid of one of his aunts, sister to the aforesaid duke; but he had not gained much. On the lord de Coucy's return to France, the king entertained him handsomely. Having considered there were

---

\* John Galeas Visconti, first duke of Milan, bore the title of count de Vertus, until Wenceslaus king of the Romans, invested him with the ducal dignity 1395. He gained, by treachery, possession of his uncle Bernabo, and put him to death by poison.—For further particulars, see Muratori and Corio.

numbers of men at arms in France then idle, on account of the truce between the French and English, he entreated the king to assist him in obtaining the free companies of Bretons, who were overrunning and harassing the kingdom, for him to lead them into Austria. The king, who wished these companies any where but in his kingdom, readily assented to his request. He lent, or gave, I know not which, sixty thousand francs, in order to get rid of these companions. They began their march towards Austria about Michaelmas, committing many ravages wherever they passed. Many barons, knights and squires of France, Artois, Vermandois, Hainault and Picardy, such as the viscounts de Meaux and d'Aunay, sir Raoul de Coucy, the baron de Roye, Pierre de Bar, and several others offered their services to the lord de Coucy. His army was increased by all those who wished to advance themselves in honour.

## CHAP. LVI.

THE TRUCE BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND IS  
 PROLONGED.—THE DEATH OF THE BLACK  
 PRINCE.—THE LORD DE COUCY RETURNS,  
 HAVING HAD INDIFFERENT SUCCESS.

**W**HEN the feast of All-saints was drawing near, the duke of Burgundy, the count de Saltzbourg, the bishops of Amiens and of Bayeux came to Bruges by orders of the king of France, to hold a conference. The duke of Anjou staid at St. Omer, where he continued the whole time.

From the king of England there came, the dukes of Lancaster and Brittany, the earl of Salisbury and the bishop of London : so that the town of Bruges was well filled by their retinues, more especially by that of the duke of Burgundy, who kept a most noble and grand state.

Sir Robert de Namur resided with the duke of Lancaster, and shewed him every attention as long as he remained in Flanders.

The ambassadors from the pope, the archbishop of Rouen and the bishop of Carpentras, were also there, who went to and fro to each party, proposing different terms for an accommodation, but without any effect ; for these lords, in their first parley, were too much divided to come to any agreement. The king of France demanded re-payment of fourteen hundred thousand francs which had been given  
 for

for king John's ransom, and that the town of Calais should be dismantled. This the king of England would never consent to. The truces were therefore prolonged until the feast of St. John the Baptist in the year 1376. The lords remained all that winter in Bruges, and some time longer. In the summer, each returned to his own country, except the duke of Brittany; he continued in Flanders with his cousin the count Louis, who entertained him handsomely.

In this year, on Trinity-Sunday, that flower of English knighthood the lord Edward of England, prince of Wales and of Aquitaine, departed this life in the palace of Westminster near London. His body was embalmed, placed in a leaden coffin, and kept until the ensuing Michaelmas, in order that he might be buried with greater pomp and magnificence when the parliament assembled in London\*.

King Charles of France, on account of his lineage, had funeral service for the prince performed with great magnificence, in the holy chapel of the palace in Paris, which was attended, according to the king's orders, by many prelates and nobles of the realm of France.

The truces, through the mediation of the ambassadors, were again prolonged until the first day of April.

---

\* The prince of Wales was buried in the cathedral at Canterbury.—For particulars, see Mr. Gough's Sepulchral Monuments.

We will now say something of the lord de Coucy and the Germans. When those of Austria and Germany heard that he was advancing with so strong a force to carry on the war against them, they burnt and destroyed three days march of country by the river side, and then they retreated to their mountains and inaccessible places.

The men at arms, of whom the lord de Coucy was the leader, expected to find plenty of forage, but they met with nothing: they suffered all this winter very great distress, and knew not in what place to seek provision for themselves, or forage for their horses, who were dying of cold, hunger and disorders: for this reason, when spring came, they returned to France, and separated into different troops to recruit themselves. The king of France sent the greater part of the companies into Brittany and lower Normandy, as he imagined he should have occasion for their services.

The lord de Coucy, on his return into France, began to think of becoming a good and true Frenchman; for he had found the king of France very kind and attentive to his concerns. His relationship to the king made him consider it was not worth his while to risk the loss of his inheritance, for so slender a reason as the war with the king of England; for he was a Frenchman by name, arms, blood and extraction. He therefore sent the lady his wife to England, and kept with him only the eldest of his two daughters: the youngest had been left in England, where she had been educated.

The

The king of France sent the lord de Coucy to attend the negotiations carrying on at Bruges, which continued all the winter. None of the great lords were there, except the duke of Brittany, who had staid with his cousin the count of Flanders; but he entered very little into the business.

---

## CHAP. LVII.

RICHARD, SON OF THE PRINCE OF WALES, IS ACKNOWLEDGED AS PRESUMPTIVE HEIR TO THE CROWN OF ENGLAND.—THE NEGOTIATIONS FOR PEACE HAVING FAILED, AND THE CEASE-TRUCE EXPIRED, THE WAR IS RENEWED BETWEEN THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

**A**FTER the feast of Michaelmas, when the funeral of the prince had been performed in a manner suitable to his birth and merit, the king of England caused the young prince Richard to be acknowledged as his successor to the crown after his decease, by all his children, the duke of Lancaster, the earl of Cambridge, the lord Thomas his youngest son, as well as by all the barons, earls, prelates and knights of England. He made them solemnly swear to observe this; and on Christmas-day he had him seated next to himself, above all his children, in royal state, that

it might be seen and declared he was to be king of England after his death.

The lord John Cobham, the bishop of Hereford and the dean of London were at this time sent to Bruges on the part of the English. The French had sent thither the count de Saltzbouurg, the lord de Châtillon and master Philibert l'Espiote.' The prelates, ambassadors from the pope, had still remained there, and continued the negotiations for peace.

They treated of a marriage between the young son of the prince and the lady Mary, daughter of the king of France : after which, the negotiators of each party separated, and reported what they had done to their respective kings.

About Shrovetide, a secret treaty was formed between the two kings for their ambassadors to meet at Montrieul sur mer ; and the king of England sent to Calais sir Guiscard d'Angle, sir Richard Sturey and sir Geoffry Chaucer. On the part of the French were, the lords de Coucy and de la Rivieres, sir Nicholas Bragues and Nicholas Bracier. They for a long time discussed the subject of the above marriage ; and the French, as I was informed, made some offers, but the others demanded different terms, or refused treating. These lords returned therefore, with their treaties, to their sovereigns ; and the truces were prolonged to the first of May.

The earl of Salisbury, the bishop of St. David's, chancellor of England, and the bishop of Hereford, returned

returned to Calais; and with them, by orders of the king of France, the lord de Coucy, and sir William de Dormans chancellor of France.

Notwithstanding all that the prelates could say or argue, they never could be brought to fix upon any place to discuss these treaties between Montreuil and Calais, nor between Montreuil and Boulogne, nor on any part of the frontiers; these treaties, therefore, remained in an unfinished state. When the war recommenced, sir Hugh Calverley was sent governor of Calais.

---

## CHAP. LVIII.

**POPE GREGORY XI. LEAVES AVIGNON, AND RETURNS TO ROME.—ON THE DEATH OF EDWARD III. RICHARD, SON OF THE LATE PRINCE OF WALES, IS CROWNED KING OF ENGLAND.**

**W**HEN pope Gregory XI. who had for a long time resided at Avignon, was informed there was not any probability of a peace being concluded between the two kings, he was very melancholy, and, having arranged his affairs, set out for Rome, to hold there his seat of government.

The



The duke of Brittany, finding the war was to be renewed, took leave of his cousin the count of Flanders, with whom he had resided upwards of a year, and rode towards Gravelines, where the earl of Salisbury and sir Guiscard d'Angle, with a body of men at arms and archers, came to meet him, to escort him to Calais, where the duke tarried a month; he then crossed over to England and went to Shene, a few miles from London, on the river Thames, where the king of England lay dangerously ill: he departed this life the vigil of St. John the Baptist, in the year 1377.

Upon this event, England was in deep mourning. Immediately all the passes were shut, so that no one could go out of the country; for they did not wish the death of the king should be known in France, until they had settled the government of the kingdom. The earl of Salisbury and sir Guiscard d'Angle returned at this time to England.

The body of king Edward was carried in grand procession, followed by his children in tears, and by the nobles and prelates of England, through the city of London, with his face uncovered, to Westminster, where he was buried by the side of his lady the queen.

Shortly afterward, in the month of July, the young king Richard, who was in his eleventh year, was crowned with great solemnity at the palace of Westminster: he was supported by the dukes of Lancaster and Brittany. He created that

that day four earls and nine knights; namely, his uncle the lord Thomas of Woodstock earl of Buckingham, the lord Percy earl of Northumberland, sir Guiscard d'Angle earl of Huntingdon, and the lord Mowbray earl of Nottingham.

The young king was placed under the tutorship of that accomplished knight sir Guiscard d'Angle, with the approbation of all, to instruct him in the paths of virtue and honour. The duke of Lancaster had the government of the kingdom.

As soon as the king of France learnt the death of king Edward, he said, that he had reigned most nobly and valiantly, and that his name ought to be remembered with honour among heroes. Many nobles and prelates of his realm were assembled, to perform his obsequies with due respect, in the holy chapel of the palace at Paris.

Shortly after, madame, the eldest daughter of the king of France, died. She had been betrothed to that gallant youth William of Hainault, eldest son of duke Albert.

## CHAP. LIX.

THE KING OF FRANCE EQUIPS FOR SEA A LARGE  
FLEET, WHICH BURNS SEVERAL TOWNS IN  
ENGLAND.

**D**URING the negotiations for peace, the king of France had been very active in providing ships and galleys: the king of Spain had sent him his admiral, sir Fernando Sauffe, who, with sir John de Vienne, admiral of France, had sailed for the port of Rye, which they burnt, five days after the decease of king Edward, the vigil of St. Peter, in June, and put to death the inhabitants, without sparing man or woman.

Upon the news of this event coming to London, the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham were ordered to Dover with a large body of men at arms: The earl of Salisbury and sir John Mountague, on the other hand, were sent to the country near Southampton.

After this exploit, the French landed in the isle of Wight. They afterwards burnt the following towns: Portsmouth, Dartmouth, Plymouth, and several others. When they had pillaged and burnt all in the isle of Wight, they embarked and put to sea, coasting the shores until they came to a port called Poq\*.

---

\* Q. if not Pool.

The earl of Salisbury and sir John Mountague defended the passage, but they burnt a part of the town of Poq. They again embarked, and coasted towards Southampton, attempting every day to land; but the earl of Salisbury and his forces, who followed them along the shore, prevented them from so doing.

The fleet then came before Southampton; but sir John Arundel, with a large body of men at arms and archers, guarded well the town, otherwise it would have been taken. The French made sail from thence towards Dover, and landed near to the abbey of Lewes, where there were great numbers of the people of the country assembled. They appointed the abbot of Lewes, sir Thomas Cheney and sir John Fufelée their leaders, who drew up in good array to dispute their landing, and to defend the country. The French had not the advantage, but lost several of their men, as well might happen. However, the better to maintain the fight, they made the land, when a grand skirmish ensued, and the English, being forced to retreat, were finally put to flight. Two hundred at least were slain, and the two knights, with the abbot of Lewes made prisoners.

The French re-embarked, and remained at anchor before the abbey all that night. They then heard for the first time, from their prisoners, the death of king Edward and the coronation of king Richard, and also a part of the regulations of the kingdom, and that great num-  
bers

bers of men at arms were under orders to march to the coast.

Sir John de Vienne dispatched a sloop to Havre, where there was a knight in waiting, who immediately rode to Paris to the king, and reported to him such intelligence respecting the death of king Edward that he was convinced of its truth.

The French and Spaniards put to sea, and, having the wind favourable, came with an easy sail that same tide, about the hour of nine, before Dover. They amounted in all to about six score galleys. At that time there were in Dover the earls of Cambridge and Buckingham, with immense numbers of men at arms and archers, who, with a hundred thousand common men, were waiting for the arrival of the French, drawn up before the port with displayed banners, for they had seen them at a distance, and they were continually joined by people from the country who had noticed this large fleet.

The French came before the harbour, but did not enter it, making for deep water, as the tide began to ebb. Notwithstanding this, the English continued strict guard all that day and following night.

The French who were on the sea came with the next tide before Calais, to the great surprise of the inhabitants, who closed their gates against them.

## CHAP. LX.

THE TOWN OF ARDRES SURRENDERS TO THE  
FRENCH.—THE DEATHS OF THE CAPTAL DE  
BUCHANAN AND OF THE QUEEN OF FRANCE.

**W**HILE these things were passing, sir Hugh Calverley governor of Calais, sir John Harlestone governor of Guines, and the lord de Gommegines governor of Ardes, made very frequent excursions into Picardy; three or four in every week. They advanced often before St. Omer, Arques, Mouton, Fiennes, and the towns in that neighbourhood, as well as to Boulogne and near to Terouenne, which were particularly molested by the garrison of Ardes. Complaints of them had frequently been made to the king of France. On asking how this was to be prevented, he was answered, ‘Sire, the garrison of Ardes is not so strong but it may be won.’ The king replied, ‘Have it then we will, whatever it may cost us.’ He soon after issued a secret summons, and it was not guessed to what part he intended sending this army, of which he made the duke of Burgundy general. There were in it twenty-five hundred lances of good and hardy men. They marched suddenly to the castle of Ardes, which they invested.

With the duke of Burgundy were the count de Guines, the marshal de Blainville, the lords de Clifton and de la Val, de Rougemont, de la Riviere,

Riviere, de Bregide, de Frainville, d'Ainville, d'Ancoing, de Rayneval, and d'Angeft, fir James de Bourbon, the fénéfchal of Hainault, with many other knights and barons. They had with them machines that caft ftones of two hundred weight, with which they made a moft vigorous affault.

The lord de Gommegines, captain of the caſtle, was aſtoniſhed to ſee himſelf ſurrounded by ſuch numbers of gallant men at arms, who ſeemed determined, that if the place were taken by ſtorm, they would ſpare no one they ſhould find within it. As he was not provided with artillery for a long ſiege, through the mediation of his couſin-german, the lord de Rayneval, he offered to enter into a treaty for ſurrendering the place, on condition of their lives and fortunes being ſpared. This treaty was long debated; but at length the caſtle was ſurrendered, and all who choſe it departed, and were conducted by fir Walter de Bailleul to the town of Calais.

Sir William des Bordes was appointed governor of Ardres: he was ſucceeded by the viſcount de Meaux, who remained there a long time: the third governor was the lord de Saimpy.

The ſame day that Ardres ſurrendered, the duke laid ſiege to the caſtle of Ardvick, which the three brothers Maulevriers held for England. During the three days he ſtaid there, many ſkirmiſhes paſſed; but they at laſt ſurrendered, and the gariſon was conducted to Calais by the marſh of France.

After this, the duke beſieged Vaucignen, which  
alſo

also surrendered on the same terms as the others had done; and, when the duke had re-victualled and reinforced them with men at arms and cross-bows, he disbanded his army and returned to the king at Paris. The Breton lords went to Brittany, for they had heard that the duke of Brittany had arrived at Brest with a large army. The barons of Burgundy and the others returned to their own homes.

You have before heard how the lord John capital de Buch, having been made prisoner before Soubise, was confined in the Temple at Paris. The king of England and his son greatly desired his liberty, and it had been much debated at the negotiations at Bruges: they would willingly have given in exchange for him the young count de St. Pol and three or four other knights: but the king of France and his council would not consent. The king had him informed through the grand prior, who had the guard of him, that if he would swear never to bear arms against the crown of France, he would listen to terms for his liberty. The capital replied, that he would never make this oath, though he were to die in prison. He remained therefore strictly guarded for five years in confinement, to his great discomfort; for he bore it so impatiently that at last he died\*.

---

\* The prince of Wales gave to the capital de Buch, and his male heirs, the county of Bigorre, with all its towns, &c. the 7th June 1369. Confirmed by the king.—RYMER.



The king of France had him interred ; and a solemn service was performed, which was attended by the barons, prelates and nobles of France.

England was thus losing her great captains ; for, in this same year, the lord de Spencer, a great banneret of England, died. He left issue by his lady, the daughter of the late sir Bartholomew Burghersh, one son and four daughters.

Soon after the death of that gallant knight the captal de Buch, the queen of France was brought to bed of a daughter, who was named Catherine ; and, whilst in childbed, the queen was seized with an illness that caused her death. This amiable queen was daughter of the valiant duke of Bourbon, killed at the battle of Poitiers. Her obsequies were performed in the abbey of St. Denis, where she was buried with great solemnity, to which were invited all the nobles and prelates of France in the neighbourhood of Paris.

---

## CHAP. LXI.

THE WAR RECOMMENCES BETWEEN THE KING OF FRANCE AND THE KING OF NAVARRE.—THE SIEGE OF CHERBOURG.—THE DUKE OF LANCASTER INVADES BRITTANY.—THE CASTLE OF AURAY SURRENDERS TO THE FRENCH.

SINCE the peace made at Vernon between the kings of France and Navarre, as has been before related, and since the king of Navarre had left

left his two children with their uncle the king of France, suspicions had fallen on a squire of the king's household. He had been placed there by the king of Navarre at the time he left his children : his name was James de la Rue. A lawyer, who was one of the king of Navarre's council, and his chancellor in the county of Evreux, was also implicated in this business : the name of this chancellor was master Peter du Tertre.

These two men were cruelly executed at Paris, and acknowledged, before all the people, that they had intended to have poisoned the king of France. The king immediately collected a large army, the command of which he gave to the constable : there were with him the lord de la Riviere and many other barons and knights. They marched into Normandy, to attack the castles of the king of Navarre, which were strong and well garrisoned, and laid siege to one of them called Pont au demer\*. The French had with them many cannon, and various engines and machines, with which, in the course of different assaults, they pressed the garrison hard ; but they defended themselves valiantly. Though there were many attacks and skirmishes, the siege lasted a long time : the castle was much ruined, and the garrison hard pushed. They were frequently required by the constable to surrender, or they would all be put to death, if the place were taken by storm : this

---

\* Pont au demer,—a town in Normandy, on the Rille, 41 leagues from Paris.

was the threat which the constable was accustomed to make.

The men of Navarre seeing their provisions decrease, and finding themselves much weakened, without any hopes of assistance from their king, who was at too great a distance, surrendered the castle, and were conducted to Cherbourg, carrying with them all their plunder.

This castle was razed to the ground, though it had cost large sums to erect; and the walls and towers of Pont au demer were levelled with the ground.

The French then advanced to besiege the fortrefs of Mortain\*, where they remained some time; but the garrison, seeing no appearance of assistance from the king of Navarre, and that the other Navarre fortresses were too weak to resist the French, surrendered themselves on the same conditions with those of Pont au demer.

You must know, that in this expedition, the constable put under the obedience of the king of France all the towns, castles, and forts in the county of Evreux: the castles and principal towns were dismantled, that from henceforward no war should be carried on against the kingdom of France from any town or castle which the king of Navarre held in the county of Evreux.

The king of France established in them the gabelle and subsidies, in like manner as they were in the realm of France.

---

\* Mortain,—a town in Normandy, 71 leagues from Paris.

On the other hand, the king of Spain had ordered his brother, the bastard of Spain, to enter Navarre with a powerful army : he attacked towns and castles, and gained much country, in spite of the king of Navarre, who could do but little to defend himself. He sent to inform king Richard of England how he was situated, in the hope that he would aid him in opposing the king of France in his county of Evreux ; for that he himself would remain in Navarre, to guard his fortresses against the king of Spain.

King Richard, in consequence of a council which had been called on this business, sent sir Robert le Roux\* with a body of men at arms and archers, to Cherbourg. The garrisons of the different fortresses won by the constable in the county of Evreux were also collected at that town.

When all were assembled, they were a numerous and handsome body of picked men, who had provided the castle with stores, for they concluded it would be besieged.

The constable and the lord de la Riviere, having visited every place in the county of Evreux with their army, found that all the towns formerly belonging to the king of Navarre were now under the obedience of the king of France : they then came before Cherbourg, which is a strong and noble place, founded by Julius Cæsar, when he conquered England, and likewise a sea-port.

---

\* Probably sir Robert Roose, or Rouse.

The French besieged it on all sides except that of the sea, and took up their quarters in such a manner before it as shewed they were determined not to quit until they had conquered it. Sir Robert le Roux and his forces made frequent sallies, for neither night nor day passed without skirmishing. The French could never form a wish for feats of arms but there were always some ready to gratify it. Many combats took place with lance and sword, and several were killed or taken prisoners on each side, during this siege, which lasted the whole summer.

Sir Oliver du Guesclin posted himself in an ambuscade near the castle: he then ordered his men to begin a skirmish, in which the French were repulsed by the English, and driven back as far as the ambuscade of sir Oliver, who immediately rushed out with his troop, sword in hand, and advanced boldly on the enemy, like men well practised in arms.

The encounter was sharp on both sides, and many a man was unhorsed, killed, wounded, or made prisoner: at last, sir Oliver du Guesclin was taken, and avowed himself a prisoner to a Navarrais squire, called John le Coq, an able man at arms: he was dragged into Cherbourg. The skirmish was now over, more to the loss of the French than of the English. Sir Oliver was sent to England, where he remained prisoner for a long time in London, and was at last ransomed.

The French remained before Cherbourg, at a heavy expense, the greater part of the winter,  
without

without having gained much. They thought they were losing time, and that Cherbourg was impregnable, as all sorts of reinforcements, men at arms, provision and stores, might be introduced into it by sea; for which reason the French broke up their camp, and placed strong garrisons in the places round Cherbourg, such as Montbourg, Pont Doue, Carentan, St. Lo, and in St. Sauveur le Vicomte. The constable then disbanded his army, and every one returned to the place whence he came. This was in the year 1378.

You have before heard how the duke of Brittany had left that country, and had carried his duchess with him to England. He resided at the estate he had there, which was called the honour of Richmond, and took great pains to obtain assistance from the young king, Richard, to reconquer his duchy, which had turned to the French, but he was not listened to. At length, the duke of Lancaster was informed, that if he landed in Brittany with a good army, there were some forts and castles that would surrender to him: in particular, St. Malo, a handsome fortress, and a seaport town. Upon this, the duke of Lancaster, having raised a large army, went to Southampton. He there prepared his vessels and stores, and embarked with many lords, men at arms and archers.

This fleet had favourable winds to St. Malo; and when near the shore, having landed and disembarked their stores, they advanced towards the town, and closely besieged it. The inhabitants were not much alarmed, for they were well pro-

vided with provision, men at arms and cross-bows, who valiantly defended themselves, so that the duke remained there a considerable time.

When the constable of France and the lord de Clifton heard of this, they sent summonses every where, and marched to St. Malo to raise the siege. Many thought that a battle must ensue; and the English drew out their army several times in battle-array, ready for the combat; but the constable and the lord de Clifton never came near enough for an engagement.

The English, therefore, having lain before the town some time, and not perceiving any inclination in the inhabitants to surrender, the duke of Lancaster was advised to decamp, for he saw it was only wasting time: he therefore re-embarked, and returned to England, where he dismissed his army.

The castle of Auray was still in the possession of the duke of Brittany, who resided quietly in England: the king of France sent thither several lords of France and Brittany, who began a siege which lasted a long time. The garrison of Auray, not seeing any hope of succour, entered into a treaty, that if they were not relieved by the duke of Brittany or the king of England, they would surrender. This treaty was not put to; and when the appointed day came, and the French were there, but no one came to relieve them, the duke nor the king of England did not appear, therefore placed under t

of France, in the same manner as the other castles and principal towns of Brittany; and those of Auray, who were attached to the duke departed thence.

---

## CHAP. LXII.

### THE FRENCH GARRISON OF MONTBOURG IS DEFEATED BY THE ENGLISH AT CHERBOURG.

SOON after Easter, in the year of our Lord 1379, king Charles of France, finding the garrison of Cherbourg was oppressing the whole country of Coutantin, appointed sir William des Bourdes, a valiant knight and good captain, to be chief governor of Coutantin, and of all the fortresses round Cherbourg.

Sir William des Bourdes went thither with a handsome body of men at arms and Genoese crossbows, and fixed his quarters at Montbourg, which he made a garrison against Cherbourg; whence he formed frequent expeditions, and would willingly have met with the men of Cherbourg; for he wished for nothing better than an engagement with them, as he felt himself a good knight, bold and enterprising, and had also under his command the flower of the men at arms from all the adjacent garrisons.

About the same time, sir John Harlestone was sent to Cherbourg, to take command of it. I have



have before mentioned him as having been governor of Guines. He had embarked at Southampton with three hundred men at arms and as many archers, and with them had safely arrived at Cherbourg. There were in this army sir Otho de Grantson\*, and among the English sir John Aubourc†, sir John Orcelle‡, with other knights and squires.

On their arrival, they disembarked their horses and armour, with other stores; and remained some days in Cherbourg to recruit themselves, and make preparations for expeditions and for carrying on the war in earnest.

Sir William des Bourdes puzzled himself day and night in endeavouring to find out some means of annoying them. You must know, that these two governors laid several ambuscades for each other, but with little effect; for by chance they never met, except some few companions, who adventured themselves fool-hardily, as well to acquire honour as gain: these parties frequently attacked each other: sometimes the French won, at others they lost.

Such skirmishes continued so often that sir William des Bourdes marched out one morning from Montbourg, with his whole force, towards

---

\* Sir Otho de Grantson—was before mentioned, not as an Englishman, but as one who had an estate on the other side of the sea.

† Sir John Aubourc. May it not be Aubrey.

‡ Sir John Orcelle. Perhaps Worley, or Horfeley.

Cherbourg, in hopes of drawing that garrison out into the plain.

On the other hand, sir John Harlestone, who was ignorant of the intentions of the French, had also that same morning made an excursion, and had commanded his trumpets to sound for his men to arm themselves, as well horse as foot, and to advance into the plain: he had already ordered who were to remain in the garrison. He marched forth in handsome display, and ordered sir John Orcelle, with his foot-soldiers, to take the lead as their guide. Having done this, he sent forward his light troops. Sir William des Bourdes had made a similar arrangement of his army. They both advanced in this array until the light troops of each party met, and came so near that they could easily distinguish each other. Upon which, they returned to the main body, and reported all they had observed.

The two leaders, on hearing their reports, were quite happy; for they had at last found what they had been seeking for, and were much rejoiced thus to meet.

When the two knights had heard the news from their light troops, they each drew up their forces with great wisdom, and ordered their pennons to be displayed. The English foot were intermixed with their men at arms. As soon as they were within bow-shot, the French dismounted; so did likewise the English: then the archers and cross-bowmen began to shoot sharply, and the men at  
arms

arms to advance with their lances before them in close order. The armies met, and blows with spears and battle-axes began to fly about on all sides. The battle was hardly fought, and one might there have seen men at arms make trial of their prowess.

Sir William des Bourdes was completely armed, and, with his battle-axe in his hand, gave such blows to the right and left that on whomsoever they fell that person was struck to the ground. He performed valorous deeds, worthy of being praised for ever after; and it was not his fault the English were not discomfited.

In another part of the field, sir John Harlestone, governor of Cherbourg, fought well and valiantly with his battle-axe, one foot advanced before the other; and well it needed him, for he had to do with an obstinate body of hardy men. Several gallant deeds were performed this day; many a man slain and wounded. Sir John Harlestone was struck down, and in great peril of his life; but by force of arms he was rescued. The battle lasted long, and was excellently kept up, as well on one side as on the other. The English had not any advantage, for they had as many killed and wounded as the French; but at last the English continued the combat so manfully, and with such courage, that they gained the field: the French were all either slain or made prisoners: few men of honour saved themselves, for they had entered into the engagement with so much good heart that they could not prevail on themselves to fly, but were determined to die or to conquer their enemies.

Sir

Sir William de Bourdes was made prisoner on good terms by a squire from Hainault, called William de Beaulieu, an able man at arms, who for a considerable time had been attached to the English in the castle of Calais : to him sir William surrendered in great grief, and much enraged that the victory was not his.

The English that day did much harm to the French. Several were made prisoners towards the end of the engagement; but it was a pity to see the numbers killed.

When the English had stripped the dead, sir John Harlestone and his men returned to Cherbourg, carrying with them their prisoners and their riches. You may be assured that they rejoiced mightily in the success of this day, which God had given to them. Sir William des Bourdes was feasted and entertained with every possible attention; for he was personally deserving of whatever could be done for him.

This defeat took place, between Montbourg and Cherbourg, the day of St. Martin *le bouillant* 1379.

When the king of France heard that the garrison of Montbourg and its governor were either slain or made prisoners, and that the country was much alarmed by this defeat, the king, like one well advised and attentive to his affairs, immediately provided a remedy, by sending, without delay, fresh troops to guard the frontiers, the fortresses and the country round Cherbourg. Sir Hutin de Breimalles was appointed general of these troops

Whilst the duke of Burgundy was with his army in Picardy, as I have before said, the duke of troops by the king of France, who kept the country against the English.

However, by orders of the king, they afterwards abandoned Montbourg, and all the country of Coutantin, which is one of the richest in the world. They made all the inhabitants give up their handsome houses and other possessions, and retreat out of this peninsula. The French guarded the frontiers at Dune, Carentan, and at St. Lo, and all the borders of the peninsula of Coutantin.

---

### CHAP LXIII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU UNDERTAKES AN EXPEDITION AGAINST THE ENGLISH IN THE BOURDELOIS.

**Y**OU have before heard related how the duke of Burgundy had made an incursion from the borders of Picardy, which was very honourable to him and profitable to the French; and how he had placed in Ardres, and the other castles of which he had gained possession, governors and men at arms to defend them: especially in the town of Ardres, where he had established for a time Sir William des Bourdes, and, in his absence, the viscount de Meaux and the lord de Sainpy. These captains had it repaired and strengthened, notwithstanding it was strongly fortified before.

The

The king of France had heard the news of this with infinite pleasure, and considered this expedition as having done him great service. He sent immediate orders to the governor of St. Omer, commanding the town of Ardres to be reinforced and provided with every kind of store and provision in the most ample manner: which orders were punctually obeyed.

The army was disbanded, except the troops which were attached to the lord de Clifson and the Bretons; but they returned as speedily as they could into Brittany, for news had been brought to the lord de Clifson and the other barons before Ardres, that Janequin le Clerc\*, an English squire and an expert man at arms, had sailed from England to Brittany, and had reinforced Brest with Englishmen. These Bretons, therefore, carried with them sir James de Verchin, sénéchal of Hainault. The duke of Burgundy returned to his brother the king of France.

At this period, there was a large body of men at arms assembled on the borders of the Bourdelois, in obedience to the summons of the duke of Anjou and the constable of France, who had appointed a day for attacking the Gascons and English, of which I shall speak more fully when better informed than I am at present.

---

\* Janequin le Clerc,—I imagine to be sir John Clark, of whom Hollingshed speaks so handsomely in the 3d of Richard II. and who was killed in a battle at a sea port in Brittany.—See Hollingshed.

Anjou resided in the good town of Toulouse with the duchess his lady, and was devising, night and day, different schemes to annoy and harass the English; for he found that various castles and towns on the river Dordogne, and on the borders of Rouergue, the Toulousain and Querci, were still harassing the country and those inhabitants who had put themselves under his obedience. He was anxious to provide a remedy for this, and resolved to lay siege to Bergerac; this place being the key to Gascony, and standing on the frontiers of Rouergue, Querci and Limousin. But as he found there were yet several great barons of Gascony adverse to him, such as the lords de Duras, de Rosem, de Mucident, de Langirant, de Guernoles, de Carles, and sir Peter de Landuras, with many more, he determined to raise a large force that would not only enable him to oppose these lords but to keep the field.

He wrote, therefore, to sir John d'Armagnac, who, in such a business, would not fail him, and sent also to the lord d'Albret. He had before sent for the constable of France, the lord Louis de Sancerre, the lord de Coucy and many knights and squires, in Picardy, Brittany and Normandy, who were all willing to serve him and to advance their reputation in arms and renown. The constable and marshal of France were already arrived.

The duke of Anjou knew that there existed a coolness between the relations and friends of the lord de Pommiers, and sir Thomas Felton, high sénéchal of Bourdeaux, and the Bourdetois. I  
will

will tell you the reason of it, and afterwards clear it up.

Long before this period, in the year 1375, there was a cruel instance of justice executed at Bourdeaux by the orders of sir Thomas Felton, lieutenant for the king of England in the Bourdelois, upon sir William lord de Pommiers, on suspicion of treason, which astonished every one.

By orders of sir Thomas Felton, this lord de Pommiers was arrested in Bourdeaux, together with a lawyer, his secretary and counsellor, called John Coulon, a native of Bourdeaux. It was proved on them (as I was at the time informed), that the lord de Pommiers had agreed to surrender himself and all his castles to the French; from which charge they could never clear themselves, so that they were condemned to death.

The lord de Pommiers and his secretary were publicly beheaded in the market-place of the city of Bourdeaux, before all the people, who much wondered thereat\*. His relations blamed this proceeding exceedingly, and that gallant knight, sir Aymon de Pommiers, uncle to sir William, set out from Bourdeaux and the Bourdelois very

\* A. D. 1377, 1378.

Rotuli Vasconiarum de anno primo Ricardi II.—Membranæ 16, 17, 18, 19.

1. Processus iudicii rediti contra Willelmum Sans, dominum de Pomers, pro prodicione, in curia Vasconiarum, et de Caltris et terris suis satisfactis ad dominum regem.



indignant at such a disgrace to his family, and swore he would never again bear arms for the king of England. He crossed the seas to the holy sepulchre, and made several other voyages. On his return, he changed to the French interest, placing himself and his territories under the obedience of the king of France. He immediately sent his challenge to the lord de l'Esparre, and made war upon him, because he had been one of the judges of his nephew.

Sir John Bleffac, sir Peter de Landuras and sir Bertrand du Franc were also implicated in these suspicions of treason, as well as on account of the surrender of the castle of Fronsac, which had been delivered up to the French, it being the inheritance of the lord de Pommiers who had been beheaded: they were detained in prison at Bourdeaux upwards of seven months. They were at length set at liberty, through the entreaties of their friends, for nothing could be proved against them. Sir Gaillard Vighier, however, continued a long time in imminent danger, which surprised many, as he was not of that country, but had come from Lombardy with the lord de Coucy, and was in the service of pope Gregory, who exerted himself in his deliverance as soon as he heard of his imprisonment, the knight having insisted on his innocence.

By these means, much secret hatred was caused, from which many mischiefs ensued.

When the duke of Anjou saw the time was arrived for his marching from Toulouse, and that  
the

the greater part of his men at arms were in the field; in particular, the constable of France, in whom he had the greatest confidence; he set out from Toulouse, and took the direct road to Bergerac. Sir Perducas d'Albret was governor of the place: he resided in a small castle, a short league from Languedoc, called Moueux, which is a strong fort.

The duke of Anjou and his army marched until they came before Bergerac, when they encamped themselves all around it, and as near the river as possible for the greater ease of themselves and their horses. Many great barons were with the duke: in the first place, sir John d'Armagnac, with a large troop; the constable of France with another large body; the lord Louis de Sancerre, sir John de Bueil, sir Peter de Bueil, sir Evan of Wales, sir Maurice de Trisquidi (who had formerly been one of the thirty knights on the French side at the duel in Brittany), sir Alain de Beaumont, sir Alain de la Houffaye, sir William and sir Peter de Mornay, sir John de Vers, sir Baldwin Cremoux, Thibaut du Pont, Heliot de Calais, and many other able men at arms with large companies. They encamped themselves to a great extent in those fine meadows along the river Dordonne, so that it was a great pleasure to look at them.

The constable was lodged very near to the quarters of the duke. Those companions who were desirous of advancing themselves frequently came to the barriers to skirmish; many of whom were

slain or wounded by arrows, as in such adventures must happen.

At the end of six days after the town of Bergerac had been besieged, the lord d'Albret and sir Bernard d'Albret, his cousin, arrived in the camp of the duke, well accompanied by men at arms and foot-soldiers, where they were received with joy, as the army was by them greatly reinforced.

The duke, with the principal leaders of the army, held a council on the eighth day, to consider in what manner they could most effectually annoy the inhabitants of Bergerac. Many speeches were made, and different proposals offered. It was long debated to storm the town, but afterwards this measure was abandoned, as their men might suffer much, and not make any great gain. The council broke up without coming to any determination, except to continue on the siege; for they were still expecting large bodies of men at arms from France, and in particular the lord de Coucy.

## CHAP. LXIV.

SIR THOMAS FELTON IS DEFEATED AND MADE PRISONER, WITH MANY OF THE PRINCIPAL LORDS OF GASCONY, BY A PARTY OF FRENCH AT THE SIEGE OF BERGERAC.

SIR Thomas Felton, who resided at Bourdeaux, was not at his ease from knowing that his enemies were but twelve leagues distant, and in such numbers that he could not think of opposing them by force, having also learnt the duke of Anjou's summons and intentions: he had, therefore sent information to the king and council in England; but those whom he had dispatched thither had not been able to do any thing, for the kingdom of England was much shaken, and different parties were mutually opposing each other.

The duke of Lancaster, in particular, was unpopular with the common people; from which cause much party animosity and danger happened afterwards in England. No men at arms were sent either to Gascony or to Brittany; on which account, those who were defending the frontiers for the young king were very ill pleased.

It happened that sir Thomas Felton had desired the lord de l'Esparre to go to England, for the better information of the king and his uncles respecting the affairs of Gascony, in order that they

might take council to provide for them. The lord de l'Esparre had already left Bourdeaux, and was proceeding on his voyage; but the wind proving unfavourable, he was driven into the Spanish seas, where he was met by some ships from Spain, with whom he engaged unsuccessfully: he was made prisoner and carried to Spain, where he remained upwards of a year and a half, and suffered many mortifications from the relations of the lord de Pommiers.

Sir Thomas was a truly valiant man: he had written and sent special messengers to the lords de Mucident, de Duras, de Rosem and de Langu-rant, four of the most noble and powerful barons of Gascony, and who were attached to England, to request, that for the honour of the king their lord, they would not fail, on any account, to defend the principality, and to desire they would come to Bourdeaux with their vassals; for all knights who were anxious to acquit themselves towards the king and lord were already arrived there.

When they were all assembled, they amounted to full five hundred lances: they remained at Bourdeaux, and in the Bourdelois, during the time when the duke of Anjou was beginning the siege of Bergerac. Sir Thomas Felton and these four gascon barons held a council, in which they resolved to march towards the French, and post themselves in a secure situation, to see if they could gain any advantage over them. They set out, therefore, from Bourdeaux with upwards of  
three

three hundred lances, taking the road for la Réole, and came to a certain town called Yuret\*, in which they quartered themselves.

The French knew nothing of this ambuscade, and suffered much from it. The siege of Bergerac was still going forward: there were many skirmishes and deeds of arms performed with the garrison by the besiegers; but the French were not great gainers, for sir Perducas d'Albret, the governor, was very active in opposing them, that no blame might be imputed to him.

The army called another council, and resolved to send for a large machine, called a sow, from la Réole, in order the more to harass the garrison. This sow was a large engine, which cast weighty stones, and one hundred men, completely armed, could be drawn up in it, and attack the walls. Sir Peter de Beuil, sir John de Vers, sir Baldwin de Cremoux, sir Alain de Beaumont, the lord de Montcalay and the lord de Gaures, were ordered to go for this engine: they left the army, in consequence, with about three hundred men at arms whom they could depend on, and, fording the river Dordogne, rode towards la Réole: they advanced between Bergerac and la Réole, until they came to Yurac, where the English were in ambuscade with upwards of four hundred combatants, of which they were ignorant.

---

\* Yuret,—probably Yurac,—a village in Guienne, near Bourdeaux.

News was brought to the army and to the constable of France, that the English had taken the field; but it was unknown which way they had marched. The constable, lest his men might be surprised, immediately ordered a large detachment to guard the foragers, who were out between the rivers Garonne and Dordonne, and gave the command of it to sir Peter de Mornay, sir Evan of Wales, Thibaut du Pont and Heliot de Calais: there might be in this detachment two hundred lances of tried men.

Sir Peter de Beuil, and the others who were sent to bring the sow, rode on to la Réole, and, having laden a great many carts with it, set out on their return, but by a different route from that by which they had arrived, for they required a broader road for their convoy, and yet they were to pass by Yurac, or very near to it, where the English were in ambuscade: however, they were so fortunate to meet with a second detachment from their army, when they were within a short league of the town. The whole then amounted to full six hundred lances. They continued their march in greater security, and more at their leisure.

Sir Thomas Felton and the barons of Gascony in Yurac were informed, that the French were escorting that way a very large engine, from la Réole to their siege of Bergerac. They were much rejoiced at this intelligence, and said it was what they wished. They then armed themselves, mounted their horses, and drew up in the best array they were able. When they had advanced  
into

into the plain, they had not long to wait before they saw the French, marching in a large body, and in handsome order. No sooner was each party assured that those whom they saw were enemies, who seemed mutually eager for the contest, than sticking spurs into their horses, and with spears in their rests, they charged each other, shouting their different war cries. I must say, that in this first conflict, many a gallant tilt was performed, and many a knight and squire were unhorsed and driven to the ground.

In such deadly warfare, there is no accident but what may happen. Heliot de Calais, a most able squire and good man at arms was knocked off his horse, by a violent stroke on the throat-piece with a spear, whose broad point was as sharp and as fine as a razor. This iron cut through the throat-piece, as well as all the veins: the stroke beat him to the ground, when he shortly after died: the more the pity. By this accident did he end his days.

Among the French, there was a knight from Berry or Limoufin, named sir William de Lignac, an excellent man at arms, who this day performed many gallant deeds.

The combat was sharp, and long continued on each side, close to the village of Yurac: when their lances failed, they drew their swords, and the attack was more vigorously renewed. Many feats of prowess were performed, many captures made, and many rescued. Of the English slain on the spot, was a Gascon knight, called the lord de Gernos



Gernos and de Calais : of the French, Thibaut du Pont.

This battle was well and long fought : many handsome deeds were done, for they were all men of valour : but in the end the English could not gain the field : they were fairly conquered by the French. Sir William de Lignac captured with his own hand sir Thomas Felton, sénéchal of Bourdeaux : nearly at the same time, the lords de Mucident, de Duras, de Rosem, de Langurant, were also made prisoners. Few of the English or Gascons but were made prisoners or slain.

Those who could escape met, on their return towards Bourdeaux, the sénéchal des Landes, sir William Helman, the mayor of Bourdeaux, and sir John de Multon ; in the whole, about one hundred lances : who were hastening to Yurac ; but, when they heard the news of so complete a defeat, they wheeled about, and returned as speedily as possible to Bourdeaux,

## CHAP. LXV.

**BERGERAC SURRENDERS TO THE DUKE OF ANJOU.—THE LORDS DE DURAS AND DE ROSEM, AFTER HAVING PROMISED TO BE OF THE FRENCH INTEREST, RETURN AGAIN TO THE ENGLISH.**

**W**HEN this engagement was over and the field cleared, and all those who had been made prisoners placed under a secure guard, they set out on their return to the siege carrying on at Bergerac.

The duke of Anjou was mightily rejoiced when he heard of the detachments having had such success, and that all the flower of Gascony, the knights and squires his enemies, were either killed or taken, and among them sir Thomas Felton, who had been very active against him ; so that he would rather have lost five hundred thousand francs than that it should have been otherwise.

Sir Peter de Beuil, sir William de Lignac, sir Evan of Wales and others, continued their march until they came to their army before Bergerac, where they were received with much pleasure by the duke of Anjou, the constable, the barons and knights their friends, who considered their success as very honourable and profitable to them.

On the morrow, the sow they had brought was erected near to the walls of Bergerac, which much  
alarmed

alarmed the inhabitants, who held a council to consider their situation, and whether they could maintain it. They addressed themselves to their governor, for they found they could not long hold out, as no succour was to be expected since their sénéchal was taken, and with him the chivalry of Gascony, on whose assistance they had depended.

Sir Perducas told them, they were in sufficient strength to hold out for some time, being well provided with provisions and artillery, if they made not any foolish agreement.

Things remained in this situation until the next morning, when the trumpets of the army sounded for an assault, and every one repaired to his banner. The constable of France, who was in the field with a grand array, sent to hold a parley with the inhabitants before the assault began, or any of their men were wounded or slain; in which he remonstrated with them, that having had their leaders made prisoners, from whom alone they could hope for assistance, and who were now in treaty to place themselves and their lands under the obedience of the king of France, they could not look for any relief; and, should the town be taken by storm, it would inevitably be destroyed by fire and flame, and none receive quarter.

These threats frightened the inhabitants, who demanded time to hold a consultation, which was granted to them. The burghers then assembled, without calling in their governor, and agreed to surrender as good Frenchmen, provided they were peaceably and gently dealt with, without  
any

any of the army entering their town, which was directly granted.

When sir Perducas d'Albret, their governor, heard of this, he mounted his horse, ordered his men to march, and, having passed the bridges, made for the fort of Moncin, when Bergerac surrendered to the French.

The constable of France took possession of it, placing therein a governor and men at arms to keep and defend it.

After the surrender of Bergerac, the duke of Anjou was advised to advance further into the country, and lay siege to Castillon\* on the Dordonne. News of this was soon spread through the army, when every one began to make his preparations accordingly; that is to say, the duke, the constable and the other men at arms, except the marshal of France, who remained behind to wait for the lord de Coucy, as he was expected to arrive that evening (which indeed he did), when the marshal advanced to meet him with a very large attendance of his men, and received him most amicably. They remained all that night in the place which the duke had left.

The duke and his army advanced to a fine mead, on the banks of the Dordonne, in his march to Castillon.

Under the command of the lord de Coucy were, sir Aymon de Pommiers, sir Tristan de Roye, the

---

\* Castillon,—a town of Guyenne, election of Bourdeaux.

lords de Faignelles, de Jumont, sir John de Rosay, sir Robert de Clermont, and several other knights and squires. They marched from their quarters, and continued advancing in company with the marshal of France and his troops until they arrived at the army of the duke, where they were received with much satisfaction.

In the road to Castillon, there is a town called St. Foy : before the van-guard arrived at Castillon, they marched thither, and, having surrounded it, began to attack it briskly. This town had not any men at arms, and but trifling fortifications, so that it did not long defend itself. On its surrender, it was pillaged.

The siege was formed before Castillon above the river, and continued for fifteen days : of course, there were many skirmishes at the barriers, for some English and Gascons had retreated thither after the battle of Yurac, and defended themselves valiantly.

The gascon barons who had been made prisoners at Yurac, were still in the French camp, and in treaty to turn to the French party. Sir Thomas Felton was not solicited so to do, as he was an Englishman, but had his ransom fixed by his master, sir William de Lignac, to whom he paid thirty thousand francs, and obtained his liberty : but this was not immediately settled.

After much negotiating, the four gascon barons turned to the French : they engaged, on their faith and honour, that themselves and their vassals would ever after remain good Frenchmen ; for  
which

which reason the duke of Anjou gave them their liberties.

The lords de Duras and de Rosem left the duke with a good understanding, intending to visit their own estates: the lords de Mucident and de Langurant remained with the army, and were graciously treated by the duke of Anjou, with whom they frequently dined and supped.

The first mentioned lords thought the duke very obliging in thus lightly allowing them to depart, which indeed he afterwards repented, as he had good reason. These two lords, when on their road conversing together, said; ‘How can we serve the duke of Anjou and the French, when we have hitherto been loyal English? It will be much better for us to deceive the duke of Anjou than the king of England, our natural lord, and who has always been so kind to us.’ This they adopted, and resolved to go to Bourdeaux, to the sénéchal des Landes, sir William Helman, and assure him that their hearts would never suffer them to become good Frenchmen.

The two barons continued their journey to Bourdeaux, where they were joyfully received: for they had not then heard any thing of their treaties with the duke of Anjou.

The sénéchal des Landes and the mayor of Bourdeaux were inquisitive after news, and what sums they had paid for their ransoms. They said, that through constraint and threats of death, the duke of Anjou had forced them to turn to the French; but added, ‘Gentlemen, we will truly  
tell

tell you, that before we took the oath, we reserved in our hearts our faith to our natural lord the king of England ; and, for any thing we have said or done, will we never become Frenchmen.'

The knights from England were much pleased with these words, and declared they had acquitted themselves loyally towards their lord.

Five days afterwards, news was brought to the duke of Anjou and the army before Castillon, that the lords de Duras and de Rosem had turned to the English, which very much astonished the duke, the constable and the other barons. The duke then sent to the lords de Mucident and de Langu-rant, told them what he had heard, and asked what they thought of it : these barons, who were exceedingly vexed, replied ; ' My lord, if they have broken their faith, we will not belie ours ; and that which we have said and sworn to you we will loyally keep, nor shall the contrary be ever reproached to us ; for by valour and gallant deeds of arms have your party conquered us, and we will therefore remain steady in our obedience to you.'

' I believe you firmly,' said the duke of Anjou, ' and I swear by God first, and then by my lord and brother, that on leaving this place, we will not undertake any one thing before we have besieged the towns of Duras and Rosem,'

Things remained in this state ; that is to say, the duke of Anjou much enraged at the conduct of the two gascon barons, and the siege continuing  
before

before Castillon. The town and castle of Castillon, on the Dordonne, was a town and inheritance of the capital de Buch, whom the king of France had detained in prison at Paris.

---

## CHAP. LXVI.

### CASTILLON, SAUVETERRE AND SEVERAL OTHER PLACES IN GASCONY SURRENDER TO THE DUKE OF ANJOU.

**D**URING the time Castillon was besieged, there was a great famine, in so much that for money there was difficulty in getting provisions. The French were forced to march twelve or fifteen leagues for forage for the army, and in going and returning they ran great risks; for there were many castles and English garrisons on the frontiers, from whence they sallied forth and formed ambuscades; or they waited in the narrow passes and defiles; and whenever they found themselves the strongest, they fell upon the French foragers, killed and wounded them, and carried off their forage. For this reason, they never could forage but in large bodies.

The siege of Castillon was carried on with much vigour, and the garrison so harassed by assaults and engines that they surrendered, on their lives and fortunes being spared. The men at arms



marched out, and as many more as chose to leave it, and went to St. Macaire\*, where there is a good castle and strong town.

On the surrender of Castillon, the duke of Anjou received the fealty and homage of the inhabitants, and renewed the officers : he appointed as governor of it a knight from Touraine, called sir James de Montmartin.

When they were about to march from Castillon, they called a council to consider whither they should go next ; and it was determined to advance towards St. Marine ; but, as several small forts were scattered about the country before they could arrive there, it was not thought proper to leave them in their rear on account of the foragers. They therefore, on quitting Castillon, marched to Sauveterre †, which they besieged.

Other intelligence was brought, respecting the lords de Duras and de Rosem, different from what had been at first reported ; that in truth they were at Bourdeaux, but it was not known on what terms.

This news was spread through the army, and was so public as to come to the ears of the lord de Mucident and de Langurant : they mentioned it to the lord de Coucy and sir Peter de Bueil, whom they were desirous to interest in excusing those knights, adding that it was very simple to

\* St. Macaire,—a city in Guyenne, on the Garonne, nine leagues from Bourdeaux.

† Sauveterre,—a town in Gascony, diocese of Comminges.

believe such tales so lightly told. They replied, they would willingly undertake to speak to the duke, who told them he should be very happy to find the contrary true to what he had heard. The affair remained in this state, and the siege of Sauveterre continued:

The town of Sauveterre held out only for three days; for the knight who was governor surrendered it to the duke, on condition of himself, his troops, with their fortunes, being spared. By these means they marched and came before St. Bazile, a good town, which immediately surrendered, and put itself under the obedience of the king of France.

They then advanced to Montségur\*, which they attacked on their arrival, but did not gain it on this first attempt. They encamped and refreshed themselves for the night. On the morrow, they prepared for the assault, and those within, seeing they were in earnest, began to be greatly alarmed, and called a council, wherein it was at last determined that they would offer to surrender on having their lives and fortunes spared; and upon these terms they were received.

The French marched away to another good walled town, situated between St. Macaire and la Réole, called Auberoche. They were four days before they could gain it, which was done by capitulation. The French then advanced to St. Macaire.

---

\* A village in Gascony, election of Landes.

## CHAP. LXVII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU TAKES THE TOWN AND  
CASTLE OF ST. MACAIRE BY CAPITULATION,—  
THE TOWN OF DURAS BY STORM, BUT THE  
CASTLE RECEIVES QUARTER.

THE army of the duke of Anjou was daily increasing from all quarters ; for such knights and squires as were desirous of renown came to wait on him, and to serve him. The siege was formed before St. Macaire in a very handsome manner ; for those men at arms had retreated thither who had quitted the garrisons which had surrendered. The town, therefore, had been greatly reinforced, and better guarded. There were many grand assaults and skirmishes, as well before the town as at the barriers.

Whilst the siege was going forward, the duke of Anjou and the constable of France ordered the leaders of the different corps to make excursions in various parts. Large detachments, therefore, set out, under the orders of the marshal of France, sir Perceval de Marneil and sir William de Moncontour.

These detachments remained for six days in the field, took several towns and small castles, and put all the surrounding country under the subjection of the king of France. None went out to oppose them, for the whole country was almost empty

empty of men at arms attached to the English, and the few who were there fled towards Bourdeaux. When they had finished their expeditions, they returned to the army.

The inhabitants of St. Macaire knew well that they could not hold out for a long time ; and the besiegers promised them every day, that if they suffered themselves to be taken by storm, they should all without mercy be put to death. They began to be doubtful lest their career might terminate in this cruel manner, and secretly opened a treaty with the French to surrender, on their lives and fortunes being spared.

The men at arms in St. Macaire had intelligence of this, and, suspecting the inhabitants might perhaps form some treaty inimical to them, they retired into the castle, which was large and strong, and built to stand a good-siege, taking with them all their own wealth, and a good deal of pillage from the town. Upon this, the inhabitants surrendered their town to the king of France.

The duke of Anjou received intelligence during the siege of St. Macaire, that his lady the duchess had been brought to bed of a son at Toulouse. The duke and the whole army were much rejoiced at this event, and their warlike heroism was greatly increased.

The men at arms entered the town, for it had large and handsome houses, in which they refreshed themselves, as they had wherewithal, the town being well provided with every sort of provision.

The castle was surrounded on all sides, and engines erected before it, which cast such large stones as greatly astonished the garrison. Whilst this siege was carrying on, true intelligence was brought respecting the lords de Duras and de Rosem, by two heralds who declared they had turned to the English. On hearing this, the duke said, ' Let me but gain St. Macaire, and I will immediately march and lay siege to Duras.' He ordered the attacks on the castle to be renewed with greater vigour, for he was not willing to leave it in his rear.

The garrison seeing themselves thus attacked, without any hopes of succour, and knowing that the duke and constable were determined to have them by fair or foul means, thought they should act wisely if they entered into a treaty, which they accomplished, and delivered up the castle, on their lives and fortunes being spared, and on being conducted to Bourdeaux. Thus did the town and castle of St. Macaire become French.

The duke of Anjou took possession of it, appointed a governor, and then decamped with his whole army, taking the road towards Duras.

The army continued its march until it came before Duras, when an attack was immediately ordered. The men at arms made themselves ready, and the cross-bowmen, well shielded, advanced to the town; some of whom had provided themselves with ladders, in order the more easily to scale the walls.

This

This attack was very severe, and those who had mounted the walls fought hand to hand with their opponents: so many gallant deeds were done by each party, that it lasted the greater part of the day.

When they had thus well fought for a length of time, the marshals ordered the trumpets to sound a retreat, and every man retired to his quarters for the night. In the mean time, sir Alain de la Haye, and sir Alain de St. Pol, arrived at the army with a large troop of Bretons, who had marched towards Libourne\*, and had attacked an English garrison at Cadillac†, which they had taken by storm, and slain all within it.

On the morrow morning, the duke ordered the storming to be renewed, and that each man should exert himself to the utmost. He had it also proclaimed by a herald, that whoever should first enter Duras should receive five hundred francs.

The desire of gaining this reward made many poor companions come forward. Ladders were placed against the walls in various places, and the attack began in earnest; for the young knights and squires, who were eager for renown, did not spare themselves, but fought with a thorough good will.

---

\* Libourne,—a city of Guyenne on the Dordonne, ten leagues from Bourdeaux.

† Cadillac,—a town in Guyenne, seven leagues from Bourdeaux.

The lord de Langurant had ascended a ladder, with his sword in his hand, and fought hard to enter the town the first, not indeed for the five hundred francs, but to illustrate his name; for he was exceedingly angry that the lord de Duras had so lightly turned to the English. The lord de Langurant, as I must say, performed such deeds that his own people as well as strangers were quite astonished therewith, and advanced so far that his life was in great jeopardy; for those within side the walls tore off the helmet from his head, and with it the hood, so that he would inevitably have been slain, if his own squire, who followed him close, had not covered him with his target. The knight descended the ladder by degrees, but he received in his descent several heavy blows on the target. He was much esteemed for this assault, by all those who saw him.

In another part, sir Tristan de Roye and sir Perceval d'Ayvenal, mounted on ladders, fought most valorously; and also sir John de Jumont and sir John de Rosay, where each for his part did wonders in arms. On the battlements was the lord de Seriel, mounted on a ladder, fighting gallantly hand to hand with those on the inside; and all who saw him said, that if any one was likely to have the advantage of first entering the town, he was in the road so to do.

This knight did not thus adventure himself for profit, but for glory: however, as fortune is hazardous, he was struck down with such force by a  
sword,

sword, that he tumbled into the ditch, and broke his neck. In suchwise died this knight.

The same fate attended a squire from Brittany, who bore for his arms two chevrons gules, chequered with or, argent, and azur. This vexed the constable so much that he ordered the assailants to be reinforced, and the fight continued with more vigour than before. The lord de Mucident proved himself an able knight, and shewed he was indeed a Frenchman from the manner in which he assaulted.

The town of Duras was taken by storm, and the first persons who entered it were sir Tristan de Roye and sir John de Rosay. When the men at arms in Duras saw that the town must be lost, they retreated into the castle, leaving the rest to its fate. Thus was Duras taken, and all found in it were put to death. The men at arms retired to their quarters, where they disarmed themselves, and took their ease, having plenty of provision with them.

On the morrow morning, the constable of France, attended by the marshal, mounted their horses, and rode to the castle to reconnoitre, and see on which side they could best attack it. Having well examined it, they found it was marvelously strong, and said, that without a very long siege, it would not be easily taken: on their return, they related this to the duke of Anjou. 'That does not signify,' replied the duke, 'for I have said and sworn, that I would not stir from hence until I should have this castle under my obedience.'



obedience.' 'And you shall not forswear yourself,' answered the constable.

Engines were directly pointed against the castle, as they were ready on the spot. When those within saw the great preparations that were making against them, as well by those in the town as by the French, and that the attack would be severe, and probably fatal to them, they thought it advisable to enter into a negotiation. They opened a treaty with the constable, who agreed to spare their lives and fortunes on their surrendering the castle. The duke of Anjou was therefore advised by the constable not to fatigue or hurt his men, but to grant them quarter, which he did. On the third day they marched out of the castle, and were conducted whither they wished to go, and the constable took possession of it; but I believe the duke of Anjou ordered it to be razed to the ground.

---

## CHAP. LXVIII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU RETURNS TO THE DUCHESS  
AT TOULOUSE, AND THE CONSTABLE TO THE  
KING OF FRANCE.—EVAN OF WALES LAYS  
SIEGE TO MORTAIN SUR MER.

**A**FTER the conquest of the town and castle of Duras, the duke of Anjou ordered sir John de Jumont, sir Tristan de Roye, and sir John

John de Rosay, to remain in the town of Landurant\* (for the lord of it had turned to the French since he had been made prisoner at the battle of Yurac), with one hundred good spears to guard the frontiers against the Bourdelois: he himself wished to return to Toulouse to see his duchess, who had been delivered of a handsome boy, for he was desirous of holding a grand feast at Toulouse to celebrate this event.

He therefore ordered men at arms to the different towns and castles which he had conquered. On dismissing Evan of Wales, he said to him; ' You will take under your command the Bretons, Poitevins, and Angevins, with whom you will march into Poitou, and lay siege to Mortain furmer, which the lord de l'Estrade† holds; and do not quit the place for any orders which you may receive in the king's name until you have had possession of it; for it is a garrison that has done us much mischief.'

' My lord,' replied Evan, ' as far as shall be in my power I will loyally obey you.' The duke, the constable, and the lord de Coucy, then ordered all those who were to accompany Evan into Poitou. Upon this, full five hundred good men at arms left the duke, and took the road to Saintonge, in order to advance towards St. Jean d'Angeli.

---

\* Landurant,—should be Landiras,—a town in Guyenne, near Bourdeaux. William Shalton was lord of Landirans.—See *Rolls Gasconnes*.

† The fouldich de l'Estrade.—See *Anstis*.

The duke of Anjou, the constable of France, the lord de Coucy, the marshal of France, sir John and sir Peter de Bueil, returned to Toulouse, where they found the duchess newly recovered from her lying-in. On this event, there were very great rejoicings and feastings at Toulouse.

The constable and the lord de Coucy then returned to Paris; the marshal de Sancerre into Auvergne, to assist the dauphin of Auvergne and the barons of that country, who were carrying on the war against the English that had remained in Limousin, Rouergue, and on the borders of Auvergne.

Let us now say something of Evan of Wales, how he laid siege at this season to Mortain, and how he harassed its garrison. Evan of Wales, being desirous of obeying the orders of the duke of Anjou, (for he knew well that whatever the duke did was by the directions of the king of France his brother, as he had paid all the expenses of the different expeditions he had made) had advanced as far as Saintes. He had halted to refresh himself and his companions in that rich country between Saintes and Poitou, and in the beautiful meads which are on the banks of the rivers in those parts. Many knights and squires of Poitou were with him, such as the lords de Pons, de Touars, de Vivarois, the lord James de Surgeres, and several more. On the other hand, from Brittany and Normandy, were sir Maurice de Trifiquedi, sir Alain de la Houffaye, sir Alain de St. Pol, sir Perceval d'Ayneval, sir William de  
Montcontour,

Montcontour, the lord de Mommor, and Morelet his brother.

These troops, when ordered, marched away, and laid siege to Mortain. The castle is situated on the Garonne, near to and below its embouchure with the sea: it is the handsomest and strongest fort in all the borders of the countries of Poitou, la Rochelle, and Saintonge.

When Evan of Wales, the barons and knights were arrived there, they formed the siege very prudently, and provided themselves by little and little with every thing they wanted; for they were well aware that they could never conquer the castle by storm, but that it must be won by distressing the garrison with famine and a long blockade.

Evan, therefore, ordered four block-houses to be erected, so that no provision could enter the place by sea or by land.

At times, the young knights and squires who wished to display their courage, advanced to the barriers of the castle, and skirmished with the garrison. Many gallant deeds were there performed.

There was a knight in Mortain called the Soul-dich, who was from Gascony, a valiant knight and able man at arms, whose orders they obeyed as if he had been their governor. The castle was plentifully supplied with wines and provision, but they were in great want of several smaller necessaries.

## CHAP. LXIX.

KING CHARLES OF FRANCE INSTIGATES THE  
SCOTS TO MAKE WAR ON ENGLAND.—THE  
SCOTS TAKE THE CASTLE OF BERWICK.

**K**ING Charles of France, notwithstanding he always resided at Paris, or at various other places in France which pleased him more, and that he never bore arms himself, kept up a very sharp war against his enemies the English. He had formed alliances, as well in the empire as with the adjoining kingdoms, in a greater degree than the four or five preceding kings of France had ever done. He paid great attentions to all from whom he thought he should derive any assistance; and because king Richard of England was young, and his kingdom unsettled, he had sent to renew his alliance with the Scots, and with their king, Robert Stuart, who had succeeded his uncle king David Bruce, and to excite them to make war upon the English, so that they should be disabled from crossing the seas.

Upon this, king Robert, after the death of Edward and the coronation of Richard, assembled his council at Edinburgh, where he had summoned the greater part of those barons and knights from whom he looked for assistance. He remonstrated with them against the English for having in former times done them much mischief by burning  
ing

ing their country, razing their castles, killing and ransoming the inhabitants: that the time was now arrived when they might revenge themselves for all these disgraces; as king Edward was deceased, who had been so successful against them, and a young king was now on the throne.

The barons of Scotland and the young knights present, being desirous of advancing themselves and revenging the injuries which the English had formerly done to their country, replied unanimously, that they were willing and prepared to invade England, either to-day or to-morrow, or whenever he pleased.

This answer was very agreeable to the king of Scotland, who returned them his thanks for it.

Four earls were appointed captains of men at arms; namely, the earl of Douglas, the earl of Moray, the earl of Mar and the earl of Sutherland; sir Archibald Douglas constable of Scotland, and sir Robert de Verri\* marshal of the whole army.

Summons were immediately issued for the assembling of the forces by a certain day in the Merse, which is the country bordering on England. Whilst this summons was obeying, a valiant squire of Scotland, named Alexander Ramsay, set off with forty men from his company, determined to perform a gallant enterprize. They were all well mounted, and, having rode the whole night through bye roads, came to Berwick nearly at day-break.

\* Sir Robert de Verri. Q.

A squire attached to the earl of Northumberland, called William Bisset, was governor of the town of Berwick ; and a very able knight, called sir Robert Abeton \*, was constable of the castle.

When the Scots were arrived near Berwick, they concealed themselves, and sent a spy to observe the state of the castle. The spy entered it as far as the ditches, wherein there was not any water, nor indeed could any be retained in them, for they were of moving sands: he looked about him on all sides, but did not see a soul: upon which, he returned back to his masters.

Alexander Ramsay directly advanced with his companions, without speaking a word, and passed the ditches: they had brought good ladders with them, which they placed against the walls. Alexander was the first who mounted them sword in

\* Sir Robert Abeton—sir Robert Boynton. Dr. Fuller, in his history of Berwick, 1799, says, ‘that seven intrepid Scotsmen in 1377 took possession of Berwick castle by storm in the night, and continued masters of it for eight days, though it was besieged by seven thousand English archers and three thousand cavalry, and only lost two of their number, which had increased to forty-eight when they were subdued. Notwithstanding this heroic achievement, they were all put to the sword.

‘ Upon entering the castle, they killed the governor, sir Robert Boynton, but liberated his lady for two thousand marks.

‘ When the earl of Northumberland summoned these heroes to surrender, they boldly replied ;

‘ That they would not yield it either to the kings of England or Scotland, but would retain and defend it for the king of France.’

No authority is mentioned.

hand,

hand, and entered the castle followed by his men without any opposition.

When they had all entered, they hastened to the great tower where sir Robert Boynton slept, and began to cut down the door of it with the axes they had brought. The governor was suddenly awakened: he had slept all the night, and kept but a poor watch, for which he paid dear. He heard the door of his chamber broken, and thought it might be done by some of his own men who wanted to murder him, because he had quarrelled with them the preceding week. With this idea, he opened a window which looked on the ditches, leaped out of it without further consideration, and thus broke his neck and died on the spot.

The guards of the castle, who towards day-break had been asleep, awakened by his groans, found the castle had been scaled and taken: they began to sound their trumpets, and to cry out, 'Treason! treason!'

John Bisset, the governor of Berwick, on hearing their cries, armed himself, as well as all the able men of the town, and advanced toward the castle, when they plainly heard the noise of the Scots; but they could not gain entrance, for the gates were shut, and the draw-bridge raised. Upon this, John Bisset, having considered a short time, said to those with him; 'Come quickly: let us break down the supports of the bridge, so that none can fall out, nor get away without danger from us.'



They soon got hatchets and wedges, and the supports of the gate next the town were destroyed. John Bisset sent off a messenger to the lord Percy at Alnwick, which is but twelve short leagues off, to request he would come immediately to his assistance with all his forces, for that Berwick castle had been taken by the Scots. He also said to Thomelin Friant\*, who was the person he sent; ‘ Tell my lord of Percy the state you have left me in, and how the Scots are shut up in the castle, and cannot get away, unless they leap the walls; so let him hasten here as fast as he possibly can.’

Alexander Ramsay and his men, having scaled the castle of Berwick, thought they had done wonders, as in truth they had: they would have been masters of the town, if John Bisset had not acted so prudently, and slain whomever they pleased, or shut them up in the tower, for such was their intention: they said, ‘ Let us now go into the town; it is ours; and seize all the riches, which we will make the good men of the town carry away for us, and then we will set fire to it, for it cannot now make any resistance: in three or four days time, succours will come from Scotland, so that we shall save all our pillage: and on our departure we will set the castle on fire, and by these means repay our hosts.’ All his companions assented, for they were eager for gain. They tightened on their

---

\* Thomelin Friant. Q.

arms, and each grasped a spear, for they had found plenty in the castle, and, opening the gate, let down the draw-bridge. When the bridge was let down, the chains which supported it broke; for the pillars on which it should have rested were destroyed, and the planks carried into the town.

When John Bisset, and the inhabitants who were there assembled, saw them, they began shouting out, 'Oh what, are you there? keep where you are, for you shall not go away for a certainty without our permission.'

Alexander Ramsay, seeing their appearance, soon found they intended to keep them confined in the castle, and that they must get away as well as they could: he therefore shut the gates, to avoid their arrows, and ordered his people to inclose themselves within, intending to defend the castle. They flung all the dead into the ditches, and shut up the prisoners in a tower. They thought the place was full strong enough to hold out until succours should come from Scotland, for the barons and knights were assembling in the Merse and in that neighbourhood: the earl of Douglas had even left Dalkeith, and arrived at Dunbar.

We will now return to the squire whom John Bisset sent to Alnwick, and speak of his arrival, and of the information he gave to the earl of Northumberland.

## CHAP. LXX.

THE EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND RETAKES THE  
CASTLE OF BERWICK.

**T**HOMELIN Friant made haste until he arrived at Alnwick, and entered the castle from the knowledge he had of it; for it was so early that the earl of Northumberland was not out of bed. Having arrived at his bedside to speak to him, for the business was very pressing, he said; ‘My lord, the Scots have this morning taken Berwick castle by surprise; and the governor of the town sends me to inform you of it, as you are the lieutenant of all these countries.’

When the earl heard this news, he made every possible haste to order succour to Berwick: he sent off letters and messengers to all knights and squires of Northumberland, and to those from whom he expected any assistance, desiring them to repair to Berwick without delay, and informing them that he was marching thither to besiege the Scots, who had conquered the castle.

This summons was soon spread over the country, and every man at arms, knight, squire and cross-bowman left their houses. The lord Neville, the lord Lucy, the lord Gastop\*, the lord Stafford, the lord de Blelles†, the governor of

---

\* Gastop. Q.

† Blelles. Q. Bellasis.

Newcastle, and a right valiant and expert man at arms, called sir Thomas Musgrave, were there; but the earl of Northumberland first arrived at Berwick with his people; and forces daily came thither from all parts.

They were in the whole about ten thousand men, who surrounded the castle so closely on all sides that a bird could not have escaped from it without being seen. The English began to form mines, the sooner to accomplish their purpose against the Scots and regain the castle.

Intelligence was brought to the barons and knights of Scotland, that the earl of Northumberland, with the chivalry of that country, were besieging their countrymen in Berwick castle: they therefore determined to march thither, raise the siege and reinforce the castle, for they considered what Alexander Ramsay had performed as a most gallant achievement. Sir Archibald Douglas, the constable, said; 'Alexander is my cousin, and it is his high birth that has caused him to undertake and execute so bold a feat as the taking of Berwick castle; it behoves us to do all in our power to assist him in this business, and if we can raise the siege it will be to us of great value: I am of opinion, therefore, that we march thither.' He immediately ordered part of the army to remain behind, and the rest to advance toward Berwick.

He chose five hundred lances from the flower of the Scots army, and set off well mounted and in good order, taking the road to Berwick,

The English who were before Berwick with ten thousand men, including archers, soon heard how the Scots intended to raise the siege and reinforce the garrison: they called a council, and resolved to extend their ground, to wait for them and offer battle, as they were anxious to meet them.

The earl of Northumberland ordered all to prepare themselves, and march into the plain to be mustered, when they were found to amount to full three thousand men at arms and seven thousand archers.

When the earl saw his army so numerous, he said; 'Let us keep to this ground, for we are able to combat all the force Scotland can send against us.' They encamped on an extensive heath, without the walls of Berwick, in two battalions and in good array.

This had been scarcely done an hour before they perceived some of the scouts of the Scots army advancing, but too well mounted to be attacked by the English: however, some English knights and squires would have been glad to have quitted their line to have checked their career, but the earl said, 'Let them alone, and allow their main body to come up: if they have any inclination for the combat, they will themselves advance nearer to us.'

The English remained very quiet, so that the Scots scouts came so close they were able to reconnoitre their two battalions and judge of how many men they were composed. When they had sufficiently observed them, they returned to their lords, and related what they had seen, saying; 'My lords,

lords, we have advanced so near to the English that we have fully reconnoitred them: we can tell you, they are waiting for you, drawn up in two handsome battalions, on the plain before the town: each battalion may consist of five thousand men: you will therefore consider this well. We approached them so close that they knew us for Scots scouts; but they made not the smallest attempt to break their line to pursue us.'

When sir Archibald Douglas and the Scots knights heard this account, they were quite melancholy, and said; 'We cannot think it will be any way profitable for us to advance further to meet the English; for they are ten to one, and all tried men: we may lose more than we can gain: and a foolish enterprize is never good, and such is what Alexander Ramsay has performed.'

Sir William Lindsay, a valiant knight and uncle to Alexander Ramsay, took great pains to persuade them to succour his nephew, saying; 'Gentlemen, my nephew, in confidence of your assistance, has performed this gallant deed, and taken Berwick castle. It will turn to your great shame, if he should be lost, and none of our family in future will thus boldly adventure themselves.'

Those present answered, 'That they could not amend it, and that the many gallant men who were there could not be expected to risk their own destruction in the attempt to prevent a single squire from being made prisoner.' It was therefore determined to retreat further up in their own country

among the mountains near the river Tweed, whither they marched in good order and at their leisure.

When the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, and the other barons of England, found the Scots were not advancing, they sent off scouts to enquire what was become of them, who brought back intelligence that they had retreated towards the Merse beyond the castle of Roxburgh\*.

On hearing this, each man retired quietly to his quarters, where they kept a strict guard until the morrow morning about six o'clock, when they all made themselves ready for the attack of the castle. The assault immediately began: it was very severe, and continued until the afternoon. Never did so few men as the Scots defend themselves so well, nor was ever castle more briskly attacked; for there were ladders raised against different parts of the walls, in which men at arms ascended with targets over their heads, and fought hand to hand with the Scots. In consequence, many were struck down and hurled into the ditches. What most annoyed the Scots were the English archers, who shot so briskly that scarcely any one dared to appear on the bulwarks. This assault was continued until the English entered the castle, when they began to slay all they could lay hands on: none escaped death except Alexander Ramsay, who was made prisoner by the earl of Northumberland.

---

\* There seems some mistake of geography here.

In this manner was Berwick castle regained. The earl of Northumberland appointed John Bisset constable thereof, a very valiant squire, through whose means, as you have already heard, it had been reconquered. He had every part of it repaired, and the bridge which he had broken down restored.

---

## CHAP. LXXI.

THE EARLS OF NORTHUMBERLAND AND NOTTINGHAM ENTER SCOTLAND WITH A LARGE ARMY.

**A**FTER the re-capture of Berwick castle, the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, the two most powerful barons of the army, determined to make an excursion after their enemies, and if they could find them to offer them battle. As they had resolved, so did they execute: early on a morning they marched away taking the road to Roxburgh up Tweedside. When they had marched about three leaguss, they called a council, and the two earls thought it advisable to send a detachment to Melrose, a large monastery of black monks, situated on the Tweed, which is the boundary of the two kingdoms, to know if any Scots were lying thereabouts in ambuscade; whilst they with the main body would march into the Merse; by which means they would not fail of hearing some news of the Scots.

That



That valiant knight sir Thomas Musgrave was appointed commander of this detachment: it consisted of three hundred men at arms and as many archers. They left the army, which, on the separation, took a different route, one marching to the right and the other to the left. Sir Thomas and his son rode on to Melrose, where they arrived at an early hour, and took up their quarters, to refresh themselves and their horses, as well as to make enquiries after the Scottish army.

They ordered two of their squires, well mounted, to ride over the country, to endeavour to find out the situation of the Scots, and in what order they were. These two squires, on leaving their commanders, continued their route until they fell into an ambuscade of the Scots, commanded by sir William Lindsay, who had posted himself in hopes of meeting with some adventure, and to hear news of Berwick, and also what had been the fate of his nephew, Alexander Ramsay, and into whose hands he had fallen: this he was very anxious to learn: he had with him about forty lances.

The English were seized immediately on their entering this ambush, which gave the knight very great pleasure. He demanded from them whence they came: but they were afraid of speaking lest they should betray their masters: however, they were forced to be explicit, for the knight assured them that he would have them beheaded, if they did not truly answer all the questions he should put to them.

When things became so serious, and they saw  
no

no means of escaping, they related how the castle of Berwick had been regained, and all found within put to death except Alexander Ramsay: they afterwards told how the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham were marching along Tweedside in search of the Scots, and how sir Thomas Musgrave, his son, sir John Seton and sir Richard Breton, with three hundred spears and as many archers, were lodged in the abbey of Melrose, and that these knights had sent them out to discover where the Scots were.

‘ By my troth,’ replied sir William Lindsay, ‘ you have found us, and you will now remain with us.’ They were then taken aside, and given up to some of their companions, with orders to guard them well under penalty of their lives.

Sir William Lindsay instantly sent off one of his men at arms, saying; ‘ Ride to our main army, and tell them all you have heard, and the situation of the English: I will remain here until morning, to see if any thing else may happen.’

This man at arms rode on until he came to a large village beyond Morlane\*, which is called Hondebray†, situated on the Tweed, among the mountains, where there were large meads and a plentiful country; for which reasons the Scots had quartered themselves there. Towards evening,

\* Morlane. ‘ Lambirlaw.’—*M<sup>r</sup> Pherfon’s Geographical Illustrations of Scottish History.*

† Hondebray. ‘ It seems Hadingtoun; and, if so, the river ought to be Tine.’

*M<sup>r</sup> Pherfon’s Geog. Illust.*

the squire arrived; and, as they knew he had brought some intelligence, he was conducted to the earls of Douglas, Murray, Sutherland, and to sir Archibald Douglas, to whom he related all you have just read.

The Scots were much vexed on hearing the recapture of Berwick castle; but they were reconciled by the news of sir Thomas Musgrave and the other English knights being quartered at Melrose. They determined to march instantly, to dislodge their enemies, and make up from them for the loss of Berwick.

They armed themselves, saddled their horses, and left Hadingtoun, advancing to the right of Melrose, for they were well acquainted with the country, and arrived a little before midnight. But it then began to rain very heavily, and with such a violent wind in their faces that there was none so stout but was overpowered by the storm, so that they could scarcely guide their horses: the pages suffered so much from the cold, and their comfortless situation, that they could not carry the spears, but let them fall to the ground: they also separated from their companions, and lost their way.

The advanced guard had halted, by orders of the constable, at the entrance of a large wood, through which it was necessary for them to pass; for some knights and squires who had been long used to arms laid, they were advancing foolishly, and that it was not proper to continue their course in such weather, and at so late an hour, as they ran a risk of losing more than they could gain.

They

They therefore concealed themselves and their horses under oaks and other large trees until it was day. It was a long time before they could make any fire from their flints and wet wood: however, they did succeed, and several large fires were made; for the cold and rain lasted until sun-rise, but it continued to drizzle until the hour of six. Between six and nine o'clock, the day began to get somewhat warmer, the sun to shine, and the larks to sing. The leaders then assembled to consider what was best to be done, for they had failed in their intentions of arriving at Melrose during the night.

They resolved to breakfast in the open fields on what they had, to refresh themselves and horses, and send out parties to forage. This was executed, and the greater part of their foragers spread themselves over the country and adjacent villages. They brought hay and corn for the horses, and provision for their masters.

It happened that the English quartered in the abbey of Melrose had that morning sent out their foragers, so that the two parties met, and the English had not the advantage: several of their party were slain and wounded, and their forage seized. When sir Thomas Musgrave and the English knights in Melrose heard of it, they knew the Scots were not far distant: they ordered their trumpets to sound, and their horses to be saddled, whilst they armed themselves, for they were determined to take the field. They left the abbey in good order, and in handsome array.

The

The Scots knights had received information from their foragers of their enemies being near: they therefore made all haste to refresh their horses, to arm and draw themselves up in order of battle, alongside and under cover of the wood. They were full seven hundred lances, and two thousand others, whom I call lusty varlets, armed with hunting spears, durks and pointed staves.

The lord Archibald Douglas and his cousin the earl of Douglas said; 'We cannot fail to have some business since the English are abroad: let us therefore be on our guard, for we will fight with them if the parties be nearly equal.' They sent two of their men at arms to observe the order of the English, whilst they remained snug in their ambush.

---

## CHAP. LXXII.

SIR THOMAS MUSGRAVE AND THE ENGLISH  
UNDER HIS COMMAND ARE DEFEATED BY  
THE SCOTS.

**S**IR Thomas Musgrave and the knights of Northumberland, being desirous of meeting the Scots on equal terms, set out from Melrose, and took the road to Morlane: they left the Tweed  
on

on their left hand, and, by an ascending road, made for a mountain called St. Giles\*.

Two Scots scouts were posted there, who, having well considered the English, immediately set off to their own troops, and related their observations on the English; in what order they were marching, and that they had only seen three banners and ten pennons.

The Scots were highly pleased with this intelligence, and said with a hearty good will, 'In the name of God and St. Giles, let us march towards them, for they must be our prisoners.' They then shouted their war-cry, which I think was, 'Douglas, St. Giles!'

They had not advanced half a league before both armies came in fight, and each knew a combat was unavoidable. Upon this the earl of Douglas knighted his son, and sir James Douglas displayed his banner. He also knighted the lord Robert and lord David, sons of the king of Scotland, who in like manner displayed their banners. There were made on the spot about thirty knights in the Scottish army, and one from Sweden, called sir George de Besmede, who bore on a shield argent a mill-iron gules with an indented bordure gules.

On the other hand, sir Thomas Musgrave made his son Thomas a knight with others of his household. The lord Stafford and lord Gascoyn made some likewise. They drew out their archers,

---

\* St Giles. Q. this mountain.

posting them on their wings; and, this day, the English cry was, 'Our Lady of Arlestone!'

The engagement then commenced with vigour, and the archers by their shooting confounded the men at arms; but the Scots were in such numbers, the archers could not be every where. There were between the knights, and squires many a tilt and gallant deed performed, by which several were unhorsed.

Sir Archibald Douglas was a good knight, and much feared by his enemies: when near to the English, he dismounted, and wielded before him an immense sword, whose blade was two ells long, which scarcely another could have lifted from the ground, but he found no difficulty in handling it, and gave such terrible strokes, that all on whom they fell, were struck to the ground; and there were none so hardy among the English able to withstand his blows.

The battle was sharp and well fought as long as it lasted; but that was not any length of time, for the Scots were three to one, and men of tried valour. I do not say but the English defended themselves valiantly: in the end, however, they were defeated, and sir Thomas Musgrave, his son, with several other knights and squires, made prisoners. The Scots took seven score good prisoners; and the pursuit lasted as far as the river Tweed, where numbers were slain.

The Scots, after this victory, resolved to march straight for Edinburgh, as they learnt from their prisoners that the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham

Nottingham were in the neighbourhood on the other side of the Tweed, on their road to Roxburgh, and that they were in sufficient numbers to engage with all the force the Scots could bring against them : on which account, they thought they might as well abandon their expedition, in order to save themselves and guard their prisoners.

They had wisely determined to retreat without making any halt ; for, had they returned that evening to their former quarters, they would have run a risk of being conquered, as I shall now relate.

When the earls of Northumberland and Nottingham, and the other barons of England had separated from sir Thomas Musgrave, they advanced directly towards Roxburgh. They learnt from their spies, that the Scots, whom they were seeking to fight with, were quartered at Hondebray, which pleased them much, and they resolved to have a skirmish with them : they were marching thither that same night the enemy had left it : but it rained so hard that they could not accomplish their purpose : they therefore took up their quarters in the woods until the morrow, when they again sent out their scouts to find where the Scots were, who returned, saying that they could not see any thing of them.

They then determined to advance towards Melrose, in order to gain intelligence of sir Thomas Musgrave and his companions. When they had dined, they marched along Tweedside, on their way thither, and sent scouts over the river to learn some news of them.



After the defeat on the plains of St. Giles, which I have just related, the scouts met several of their fellow-soldiers flying like men discomfited, who told them as much as they knew of the battle. Upon this, they returned, and with them the run-aways, who related truly what had passed between the English and Scots: they well knew they had been defeated, but were ignorant who had been killed or who made prisoner.

The lords of Northumberland, on hearing this unfortunate intelligence, were very melancholy, and with reason. They had two causes for vexation; for having lost the battle, and for having missed finding the Scots, whom they had been in search of.

A numerous council was assembled in the field, whether or not to pursue the Scots; but as they did not know which way they had marched, and night approaching, they resolved to make for Melrose, and fix their quarters there.

Before they could accomplish their march to Melrose, they heard the truth of the event of the battle; that sir Thomas Musgrave, his son, with seven score men at arms, had been made prisoners by the Scots, who were carrying them off, and had taken the road to Edinburgh.

These barons then found that they must submit to their loss, for help it they could not. They passed the night as well as they were able, and on the morrow they decamped, when the earl of Northumberland gave permission for every one to return to his home: he himself retired into his own country. Thus was this expedition put an end to.

The

The Scots returned to Edinburgh, but not all, for the earl of Douglas and his son took the road to Dalkeith. This great success which they had obtained was a great novelty for Scotland. The knights and squires treated their prisoners handsomely, ransomed them courteously, and did with them the best they could. We will now leave off speaking of the Scots, and relate other events which happened in France.

---

### CHAP. LXXIII.

#### THE DEATHS OF THE QUEENS OF FRANCE AND OF NAVARRE, AND THE RENEWAL OF THE FEUDS BETWEEN THEIR TWO HUSBANDS.

THIS year, in the month of February, the queen of France died, and, as the physicians said, by her own fault. She was with child of the lady Catherine, who was afterwards duchess of Berry. The queen, as I have before said, was not very far advanced in her pregnancy; but the doctors had forbidden her bathing, as being full of danger: however, she would persist, and continued using baths, which brought on a mortal disorder. King Charles of France never married again.

Soon after the death of the queen of France, the queen of Navarre died also. She was sister-

german to the king of France. Upon her death disputes arose among the lawyers of the county of Evreux in Normandy : they said, that that county was, by rightful succession from the mother, devolved to the children of the king of Navarre, who were separated from him, under age, and in the guardianship of king Charles their uncle.

King Charles of Navarre was so much suspected of having caused, in former times, many ills to France, that he was not thought worthy of possessing any inheritance in that kingdom under the name of his children. The constable of France, therefore, returned from Aquitaine, where he had been a considerable time with the duke of Anjou, and brought with him the lord of Mucident, that he might see the king and become acquainted with him.

The constable was received by the king with great joy, as was the lord de Mucident on his account.

There were many secret councils and conversations between the king and constable, which were not immediately made public, respecting the situation of France and Navarre. We will shortly return to this business ; but, in order to chronicle justly all the events which at this period happened in the world, I will relate to you the beginning of that grand schism which desolated the church, by which all Christendom was shaken, and from which many evils were engendered and spread abroad.

## CHAP. LXXIV.

THE DEATH OF POPE GREGORY XI.—AFTER THE  
SUDDEN DEATH OF HIS IMMEDIATE SUCCESSOR,  
THE CARDINALS ARE CONSTRAINED TO ELECT  
URBAN VI. WHICH CAUSES A SCHISM IN THE  
CHURCH OF ROME.

**Y**OU have before heard how pope Gregory XI. filled the papal chair at Avignon. When he found there was not any likelihood of his bringing about a peace between the kings of France and England, he was much displeased, for he had laboured hard at it, as well as the cardinals by his orders. He resolved, as a matter of devotion, to revisit Rome and the holy see, which St. Peter and St. Paul had edified and augmented; for he had made a vow to God, that if he should ever be raised to so eminent an honour as the papacy, he would never hold his seat but where St. Peter had placed it.

This pope was of a delicate constitution and sickly habit, so that he suffered more than another; and during his residence at Avignon he was much engaged with the affairs of France, and so much pressed by the king and his brothers, that he had not time to attend to his own concerns: he therefore said, he would place himself at a distance, that he might enjoy more repose.

He made preparations in the most ample manner becoming such a great personage, on the riviera of Genoa and on all the roads. He told his brethren the cardinals to provide for themselves; for, being resolved to go to Rome, he should certainly set out. On hearing this, the cardinals were much surprised and vexed; for they remembered the Romans, and would willingly have turned him from taking this journey, but they could not succeed.

When the king of France was informed of it, he was in a violent passion; for when at Avignon he had him more under his power than any where else. He wrote, therefore, directly to his brother the duke of Anjou, at Toulouse, signifying, that on the receipt of the letter, he should set out for Avignon, and endeavour, by talking to the pope, to make him give up his intended journey.

The duke of Anjou did what the king had ordered, and went to Avignon, where he was received with great respect by the cardinals. He took up his lodgings in the palace of the pope, that he might have more frequent opportunities of conversing with him.

You may easily imagine that he acquitted himself ably in the different conversations he had with the pope, to dissuade him from his intentions of going to Rome; but he would not listen to him on this subject, nor give up any thing that related to the affairs beyond the Alps: he ordered, however, four cardinals to remain at Avignon, to whom he gave full powers for them to act in all respects

respects, excepting some papal cases, which he had not the power to delegate out of his own hands.

When the duke found that neither reason nor entreaties could prevail with his holiness to remain where he was, he took leave of him, and said at his departure; ‘Holy father, you are going into a country, and among people by whom you are but little loved. You leave the fountain of faith, and a kingdom wherein the church has more piety and excellence than in all the rest of the world. By this action of yours, the church may fall into great tribulation; for should you die in that country (which is but too probable, as your physicians declare) these Romans, who are a strange people and traitors, will be lords and masters of all the cardinals, whom they will force to elect a pope according to their wishes.’

Notwithstanding these speeches and reasons, he would not put off his journey, but set out and arrived at Marfeilles, where the galleys of Genoa had been ordered to wait for him. The duke of Anjou returned to Toulouse\*.

Pope Gregory embarked at Marfeilles with a numerous attendance, and a favourable wind landed him at Genoa. After having re-victualled his galleys, he again embarked, and, making sail for Rome, disembarked not far from it.

---

\* Denys Sauvage says in a note, that it was after this return to Toulouse, he undertook the expedition mentioned in the lxiid chapter of this volume.

You must know, that the Romans were exceedingly rejoiced at his arrival: the consuls and all the principal nobility of Rome went out to meet him on horseback with great pomp, and conducted him with triumph into that city. He took up his residence in the vatican, and often visited a church within Rome which he was much attached to, and to which he had made many considerable additions: it was called Santa Maria Maggiore. He died soon after his arrival in this same church, in which he was buried, and there lies. His obsequies were performed in a magnificent manner, as was becoming so eminent a personage.

The cardinals, shortly after the death of pope Gregory, assembled in conclave at the vatican. As soon as they had met to elect a pope, according to the usual modes, who might be worthy and of service to the church, the Romans collected in great numbers, in the suburbs of St. Peter: they were, including all sorts, upwards of thirty thousand, encouraging each other to do mischief, if things did not go according to their wishes. They came frequently before the conclave, and said; 'Listen to us, my lords cardinals: allow us to elect a pope: you are too long about it. Chuse a Roman, for we will not have one of any other country: if you shall elect another, neither the Roman people nor the consuls will consider him as pope, and you will run a risk of being all put to death.'

The cardinals heard these words, and being in the power of the Romans, were not at their ease,  
nor

nor assured of their lives : they therefore appeased their anger as well as they could. The wickedness of the Romans arose to such a height that those who were nearest the conclave broke in, to frighten the cardinals, in order that they might the sooner decide in favour of him whom they wished. The cardinals were much alarmed, fearing they would all be put to death, and fled, some one way, some another.

The Romans, however, would not suffer them to depart, but collected them again together whether they would or not. The cardinals, finding themselves in their power and in great danger, made quickly an end of the business, to appease the people ; and, though it was not done through devotion, yet they made a good election of a very devout man, a Roman, whom pope Urban V. had raised to the purple : he was called the Cardinal of St. Peter.

This election pleased the Romans exceedingly, and the good man had all the rights attached to the papacy ; but he only lived three days, and I will tell you the reason. The Romans, being desirous of having a pope from their own nation, were so much rejoiced at the election falling as it had done on the cardinal of St. Peter, that they took the good man, who was at least one hundred years of age, and placing him on a white mule, carried him in triumph for such a length of time, through Rome, out of wickedness and in exultation of their victory over the cardinals by having gained a Roman pope, that the fatigue was too much



much for him. On the third day, he took to his bed, and died, and was buried in the church of St. Peter.

The cardinals were much vexed at the death of the pope; for, as they saw things were taking a wrong turn, they had determined, during the life of this pope, to have dissembled with the Romans, for two or three years, and to fix the seat of the church elsewhere than at Rome, at Naples or Genoa, out of the power of the Romans. This would have been carried into execution, but the pontiff's death deranged every thing. The cardinals assembled in conclave in greater danger than before; for the populace collected in large bodies before St. Peter's, shewing plainly that they would not scruple to destroy them unless they elected a pope according to their pleasure. They kept crying out before the conclave, 'Consider, my lords cardinals; consider well what you are about, and give us a Roman pope, who will reside among us; otherwise we will make your heads much redder than your hats.'

Such speeches and menaces frightened the cardinals, for they wished rather to die confessors than martyrs: to free themselves from all danger, they began to deliberate on the choice of a pope, but it fell not on one of their brother-cardinals. They elected the archbishop of Bari, a very learned man, who had laboured much for the church. With this promotion to the papacy the Romans were satisfied.

The cardinal of Geneva put his head out of one  
of

of the windows of the conclave, and, calling out aloud to the Roman populace, said, ' Be appeased, for you have a Roman pontiff, Bartholomew Prignano archbishop of Bari.'

The people unanimously answered, ' We are satisfied.'

The archbishop was not at this moment at Rome, but, as I believe, at Naples. He was immediately sent for, and, being much pleased at the event, came directly to Rome to shew himself to the cardinals.

On his arrival, great feasts were made: he was elevated, and had all the powers of the papacy. He took the name of Urban VI. This name was very gratifying to the Romans, on account of Urban V. who had much loved them.

His elevation was published in all the churches in Christendom, and made known to the different potentates, emperors, kings, dukes and earls. The cardinals wrote also to their friends, to inform them that they had chosen a pope by a good and fair election, of which several repented afterwards.

This pope renewed all the graces and pardons which his predecessor had given, so that divers left their own countries and repaired to Rome to receive them.

We will now for a while leave this matter, and return to the principal object of our history, the affairs of France.

## CHAP. LXXV.

THE KING OF NAVARRE SENDS AMBASSADORS TO FRANCE, IN HOPES OF REGAINING POSSESSION OF HIS CHILDREN.—TWO OF HIS PEOPLE ARE CONVICTED OF HAVING ATTEMPTED TO POISON THE KING OF FRANCE.

YOU have before heard, that after the death of the queen of Navarre, sister to the king of France, there were many persons who, from love to one and hatred to the other, had declared that the inheritance of the children of the king of Navarre, which had fallen to them on their mother's decease, was legally their due; and that the king of France, their uncle by the mother's side, had a right to the guardianship of them, and the management, in their name, of all the lands which the king of Navarre held in Normandy, until his nephews should be of age\*.

The king of Navarre was suspicious of something being proposed like to the above, for he was well acquainted with the laws and customs of France. He therefore determined to send the bishop of Pampeluna and sir Martin de la

---

\* Denys Sauvage says, in a marginal note, that he does not understand this; for the kings of Navarre, from father to son, were the legal inheritors of the county of Evreux; nor how the children could claim any right from their mother.

Carra into France, to entreat the king in the most amicable manner, that out of love to him; he would send him his two sons, Charles and Peter; and that, if it were not agreeable to the king to allow of both coming to him, he at least would let him have Charles, for a treaty of marriage was in contemplation between him and the daughter of king Henry of Castille. He resolved, notwithstanding this embassy to France, to order his castles in Normandy to be secretly inspected and reinforced, that the French might not seize them; for, if they were not strengthened in every respect, they might do so; and, should they once get possession, he could not regain them when he pleased.

He made choice, for this business, of two valiant men at arms of Navarre, in whom he had great confidence, whose names were Peter de Basille and Ferrando.

The bishop of Pampeluna and sir Martin de la Carra arrived in France, and had long conferences with the king, to whom, with much reverence, they recommended the king of Navarre, and entreated of him that he would suffer his two sons to depart. The king replied, that he would consider of it.

They afterwards received an answer in the king's name, his majesty being present, that the king wished to have his nephews, the children of Navarre, near him: that they could not be any where better placed: and that the king of Navarre ought to prefer their being with their uncle, the king

king of France, to any other person : that he would not allow either of them to leave him, but would keep them near his person, and form them a magnificent establishment, suitable to their rank as sons of a king, and his own nephews.' This was all they could obtain.

During the time these ambassadors were in France, Peter de Bafille and Ferrando arrived at Cherbourg with many stores. These two visited, by orders of the king of Navarre, the whole county of Evreux, renewed the officers, and placed others in the different forts, according to their pleasure.

The bishop of Pampeluna and sir Martin de la Carra returned to Navarre, and related to the king, whom they met at Tudelle\*, all that had passed in France. The king was not well pleased that he could not have his children, and conceived a violent hatred against the king of France, which he would have shewn if he had had the power ; but he was incapable of hurting that kingdom, and besides he had not formed any alliances. He thought it, therefore, better to dissemble, until he should have greater cause of complaint, and more real evils be done unto him.

The king of France and his council received information that the king of Navarre was reinforcing all the castles and towns in Normandy, which he called his own ; and they knew not what to think of his conduct.

At this time there was a secret armament formed

---

\* Tudelle,—a village in Armagnac, diocese of Auch.

in England, of two thousand men at arms, who were embarked, but without any horses, of which the duke of Lancaster and earl of Cambridge were the commanders.

The Normans, hearing of it, had informed the king of France that this expedition was certainly intended for the coasts of Normandy, but they could not say whither it had failed. Others supposed it to have been undertaken by the advice of the king of Navarre, who meant to deliver up to the English his strong places in Normandy.

The king of France was also told, that he must hasten his preparations, if he wished to be master of these castles, and that it had been too long delayed; for, if the English should once gain them, they would be enabled to harass France very much, and they could not obtain a more convenient entrance into the kingdom than by being possessors of the towns and castles of the king of Navarre.

Two secretaries of the king of Navarre were arrested in France, a lawyer and a squire: the name of the first was Peter du Tertre, and the other James de Rue: they were conducted to Paris for examination, and were found so intimately connected with the king of Navarre's intentions of poisoning the king of France that they were condemned to death, and were executed and quartered at Paris accordingly.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

THE KING OF FRANCE ORDERS THE POSSESSIONS OF THE KING OF NAVARRE TO BE SEIZED, AS WELL IN NORMANDY AS IN LANGUEDOC.—THE KING OF NAVARRE FORMS AN ALLIANCE WITH THE ENGLISH.—THE TERMS OF THAT ALLIANCE.

THESE machinations and wicked attempts of the king of Navarre were so numerous that the king of France swore he would not undertake any thing before he had driven him out of Normandy, and had gained possession, for his nephews, of every town and castle which the king of Navarre held there.

Every day brought fresh information, and worse news respecting the king of Navarre, to the palace of king Charles. It was currently reported that the duke of Lancaster was to give his daughter Catharine to the king of Navarre, who, in return, was to deliver up to him the whole county of Evreux.

These reports were readily believed in France, for the king of Navarre had but few friends there. The king of France, at this period, went to reside at Rouen, where he had summoned a large body of men at arms, and had given the command of it to the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, who advanced to Bayeux, a city in Normandy attached to Navarre.

Navarre. These barons had with them the lord Charles and lord Peter, the two sons of the king of Navarre, to shew to the whole country and to the county of Evreux, that the war they were carrying on was in behalf of these children, and for the inheritance which belonged to them in right of their mother, and which the king of Navarre wrongfully withheld.

However, the greater part of the men at arms were so much attached to the king of Navarre, that they would not quit his service: the Navarrois who were collected in Bayeux, as well as those whom he had sent thither, maintained the war for him handsomely.

The king of France ordered commissioners to Montpellier, to seize all the lands and lordships which were in the possession of the king of Navarre.

When these commissioners, sir William des Dormans and sir John le Mercier, were arrived at Montpellier, they sent for the principal inhabitants, to whom they shewed their instructions.

Those of Montpellier obeyed. Indeed it was necessary for them to do so; for had they acted otherwise they would have suffered for it, as the duke of Anjou and the constable of France had entered their territories with a considerable force, who wished for nothing better than to carry the war thither.

Two knights of Normandy, governors of Montpellier for the king of Navarre, were made prisoners by orders of the king of France, as were



also sir Guy de Graille and sir Liger d'Argeſi, who remained a long time in confinement. Thus was the town of Montpellier and all the barony ſeized by the French.

We will now return to the army of Normandy, and relate how the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere went on. They advanced to Bayeux, and laid ſiege to it. The gariſon-towns of Navarre had cloſed their gates againſt the French, and ſhewed no intentions of ſpeedily ſurrendering them.

When the king of Navarre heard that the French had ſeized the town and territory of Montpellier, and that a large army was in the county of Evreux, where they were pillaging and deſtroying his towns and caſtles, he held many conferences on theſe ſubjects with thoſe in whom he placed the greateſt truſt. It was determined in theſe councils, that as he could not receive any aſſiſtance but from England, he ſhould ſend thither a perſon in whom he conſided, with credential letters, to know if the young king Richard and his council were willing to form an alliance with him, and to aſſure them, that from henceforward he would ſwear to be true and loyal to the Engliſh, and would place in their hands all the caſtles which he poſſeſſed in Normandy.

To execute this embaffy to England, he called to him a lawyer in whom he greatly truſted, and ſaid to him; 'Maſter Paſchal, you will ſet out for England, and manage ſo as to return to me with good news, for from this day forward I will be ſteady in my alliance with the Engliſh.'

Maſter

Master Paschal prepared to do what he had been ordered; and, having made himself ready, he embarked, made sail, and landed in Cornwall, and from thence journeyed on until he arrived at Sheen, near London, where the king resided. He approached his person, and recommended to his majesty his lord the king of Navarre.

The king entertained him handsomely. There were present the earl of Salisbury and sir Simon Burley, who entered into the conversation and answered for the king, saying his majesty would shortly come to London, and summon his council on a day fixed on between them.

Master Paschal, at this council, informed the king of all that he had been charged to say: he harangued so ably and eloquently that he was listened to with pleasure. The council for the king replied, that the offers which the king of Navarre had made were worth attending to; but that, in order to form so extensive an alliance as the king of Navarre was desirous of making, it would be necessary for him to come over himself, that he might more fully explain every thing, for the affair seemed well deserving of it.

On this, the council broke up, and master Paschal returned to Navarre, when he related to the king that the young king of England and his council were desirous of seeing him. The king replied, he would go thither, and ordered a vessel, called a lin\*, to be prepared, which sails with all

---

\* Lin,—a felucca, or small frigate.—Du CANGE.

winds, and without danger. He embarked on board this vessel, with a small attendance: he, however, took with him sir Martin de la Carra and master Paschal.

The king of France, some little time before he set out for Rouen, had conceived a great hatred against the king of Navarre: he was informed secretly, by some of his household, of all his negotiations with England: in consequence, he had managed so well with king Henry of Castile, that he had sent the king of Navarre his defiance, and had commenced a severe war against him.

The king of Navarre had therefore, before his embarkation, left the viscount de Castillon, the lord de Leftrac, sir Peter de Vienne and Bascle, with a large body of men at arms, as well from his own country as from the county of Foix, with orders to defend his kingdom and his forts against the Spaniards.

He embarked with a very favourable wind, which landed him in Cornwall; from whence he journeyed until he came to Windsor, where king Richard and his council were. He was received there with great joy; for they thought they might gain much from him in Normandy, more especially the castle of Cherbourg, which the English were very desirous of possessing.

The king of Navarre explained to the king of England and his council, in a clear manner, with eloquent language, his wants, and his reasons for coming, so that he was willingly attended to, and received such promises of succour that he was well satisfied.

satisfied. I will inform you what treaties were entered into between the two kings.

The king of Navarre engaged to remain for ever true and loyal to the English, and never to make any peace with the kings of France or Castille without the consent of the king of England. He engaged to put the castle of Cherbourg into the hands of the king of England, who was to guard it for three years at his own costs and charges, but the lordship and sovereignty of it were to remain in the king of Navarre. If the English should be able, by force of arms, to gain any of the towns or castles which the king of Navarre then had in Normandy, from the French, they were to remain with the English; the lordship, however, resting in the king of Navarre\*.

The English were much pleased with these terms, because they gained a good entrance to France through Normandy, which was very convenient for them.

The king of England promised to send, at this season, a thousand spears and two thousand archers, by the river Gironde from Bourdeaux to Bayonne; and these men at arms were to enter Navarre, and make war on the king of Castille. They were not to quit the king nor the kingdom

---

\* See Rymer—for the passport to the king of Navarre, and the treaty at length, an. reg. Ric. II.

The passport for Charles of Navarre is dated a year later than Froissart mentions. It is in Rymer dated the 12th August, from the manor of Clarendon, 1370, to continue to the feast of St. John Baptist following, for five hundred persons.

of Navarre so long as there should be war between the kings of Navarre and Castille. But these men at arms and archers, on entering the territories of Navarre, were to be paid and clothed by the king of Navarre as was becoming them, and on the same footing as the king of England was accustomed to pay his soldiers.

Different treaties, alliances and regulations were drawn up, signed, sealed and sworn to, between the kings of England and Navarre, which were tolerably well observed. In this council, the king named such members as were ordered to Normandy, and those who were to go to Navarre: because neither the duke of Lancaster, the earl of Cambridge, nor the duke of Brittany, were present at these treaties, it was resolved to send copies sealed to them, in order that they might hasten to invade Normandy.

---

## CHAP. LXXVII.

THE LORDS DE COUCY AND DE LA RIVIERE  
TAKE SEVERAL PLACES IN THE COUNTY OF  
EVREUX, FROM THE KING OF NAVARRE.

**K**ING Charles of France, being wise and subtle (as his whole life plainly shewed), had received information of the armament in England, but was ignorant, whither it was to sail, to Normandy

mandy or Brittany. On account of these doubts, he had kept in the latter country a large body of men at arms, under the command of the lords de Clifson, de Laval, the viscount de Rohan, the lords de Beaumanoir and de Rochefort. They had besieged Brest by block-houses only, to prevent any provision from entering.

The governor of Brest was a valiant English squire called James Clerk.

Now, because the king of France knew of the king of Navarre's voyage to England, in the hopes of forming an alliance with his adversary the king of England, he suspected that this naval armament would land in Normandy, and seize by force those castles which belonged to the king of Navarre : he therefore in haste sent orders to the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, stating to them his suspicions, with orders to conquer, by the speediest modes possible, all castles, more particularly such as were near to the sea-coasts, by force or by negotiation. He knew that Cherbourg was not easy to be taken, and also that it could not be reinforced on the land side.

The king of France had likewise ordered large bodies of men at arms to Valognes\* from the lower parts of Brittany. Sir Oliver du Guesclin commanded the Bretons ; and the lord d'Ivoy and sir Perceval were the leaders of the Normans.

---

\* Valognes,—a town in Normandy ; it lies between Cherbourg and Carentan.

The lords de Coucy and de la Riviere had besieged the city of Bayeux with a great force, which was daily increasing from the additions the king of France was sending to them from all quarters. Bayeux is a handsome and strong city near the sea, which at that time belonged to the king of Navarre. The citizens (finding themselves thus besieged by their neighbours, who told them, that if the town were taken by storm, they would all inevitably be destroyed, both men and women, and the town re-peopled with another set of inhabitants,) began to be seriously alarmed. They saw no appearance of assistance coming to them, but, on the contrary, found themselves in opposition to the lord Charles de Navarre, to whom the county of Evreux belonged, in right of succession to his late mother. The inhabitants also listened to the harangues of the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere, who, with impressive language, shewed them the dangers into which they were running: knowing likewise that their bishop was well inclined towards the French, they thought, considering all things, it would be much better for them to surrender their city from affection, as they were required to do by the above mentioned lords, than to remain in such peril.

The inhabitants of Bayeux demanded a truce for three days; during which time, a treaty was so far concluded that the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere entered the city, and took possession of it for the king of France, as his acknowledged commissaries.

The

The attorney-general was sent thither on the part of the children of Navarre, who were present during all the negotiations.

The two lords renewed all the officers of the city, and, for fear of a rebellion, left a body of good men at arms: they then marched off to lay siege to Carentan, a handsome and strong town situated on the sea-shore, and in the district of Caen.

The inhabitants of Carentan were without any governor of note: indeed, they had not had one since sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, who had been their governor for four years, and had died there; so that they had not any to look to for advice but themselves: they knew also that the admiral of France, sir John de Vienne, in conjunction with the Spanish admiral and a large force, were before Cherbourg, but were ignorant of the treaties of the king of Navarre, as well as unacquainted with the result of his journey to England.

They were attacked every day in two different manners; by words and arms; for the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere were very anxious to gain this town, and succeeded in winning it by capitulation: they put it under the obedience of the king of France, reserving the rights of the two sons of the king of Navarre.

These lords of France readily granted very favourable terms, in order to get possession of such towns and castles as they wanted by the most expeditious means. They took possession of Carentan, reinforcing it with men at arms: they then departed,



departed, and came before the castle of Molineaux\*, which in three days capitulated. They advanced to Conches†, and encamped on the banks of the beautiful river Orne, which runs by Caen, and there refreshed themselves, until they knew the inclinations of the inhabitants, who shortly surrendered on terms; for the lords de Coucy and de la Riviere having the heir of Navarre with them gave a good colour to their proceedings.

However, when any town or castle surrendered itself to the king of France, or to his commissaries, there was a condition in the treaty, that all those who chose to depart might go wherever they pleased: those who did depart only went to Evreux, of which Ferrando, a Navarrois, was governor.

After the conquest of Conches, which was gained, as you have heard, by treaty, they advanced before Passy‡, where there was an assault: many were killed and wounded on both sides. That same day the castle surrendered to the king of France: they then marched away. In short, all that the king of Navarre possessed in Normandy surrendered, excepting Evreux and Cherbourg. When they had won different small forts, and placed the whole country under the obedience of the king

---

\* Molineaux,—a village in Normandy, election of Caen.

† Conches,—a market town in Normandy, near Evreux.

‡ Passy,—a town in Normandy, four leagues from Evreux.

of France, they laid siege to Evreux, which was cut off from any communication with Cherbourg.

In Evreux, there was, according to custom, the strongest garrison of Navarrais in Normandy; and the inhabitants never perfectly loved any other lord but the king of Navarre. The place was closely besieged. It held out for a long time; for Ferrando the governor, performed in person several gallant deeds of arms.

About this time the king of Navarre, being returned to his own country, expected to have had some assistance from the English; but it does not appear that he had any succours from them, for the duke of Lancaster and the earl of Cambridge, before these treaties had been entered on, had experienced very contrary winds for their voyage to Normandy, and so numerous a levy as had been ordered of four thousand men at arms and eight thousand archers could not immediately be assembled at Southampton, where they were to embark. It was St. John Baptist's day before they were all collected and had sailed from England. The earl of Salisbury and sir John Arundel were still at Plymouth, who ought to have reinforced Brest and Hennebon\*; but they had wanted wind, so that they joined the duke of Lancaster and earl of Cambridge's army.

They landed on the isle of Wight, where they remained some time waiting for intelligence, and to know whether they should sail for Normandy or

---

\* Hennebon. Denys Sauvage thinks it should be Aubray, or Derval, instead of Hennebon.

Brittany: they there learnt that the French fleet was at sea, on which sir John Arundel was ordered back to Southampton, with two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers, to defend that place.

---

## CHAP. LXXVIII.

THE DUKE OF ANJOU RETAINS LARGE BODIES OF  
MEN AT ARMS AGAINST THE ENGLISH.—THE  
SPANIARDS LAY SIEGE TO BAYONNE.

ON account of the information the king of France had received from the Normans, that the English were in great force at sea, but doubtful whither it was directed: he had issued a special summons throughout his realm for every knight and squire, according to his degree, to keep himself fully prepared to march to whatever part he should be ordered.

The duke of Anjou had also, at this period, retained large bodies of men at arms from all quarters, with the intention of laying siege to Bourdeaux. He had with him his brother the duke of Berry, the constable of France, and all the flower of knighthood from Gascony, Auvergne, Poitou and Limousin. In order to carry their enterprize, he had raised an immense army, and had also, with the consent of the king of France, collected

two

two hundred thousand francs in Languedoc; but he could not at present undertake this siege, for the king of France had recalled the duke of Berry, the constable and other barons, on whose assistance he had depended, as it was well known the English were at sea, but uncertain in what part of the kingdom they would attempt to land.

Notwithstanding this expedition from Languedoc had failed, the poor people who had been so hard pressed to pay such large sums were never repaid any part.

The king of Castille, about this time, laid siege to Bayonne with full twenty thousand Spaniards and Castilians: he began the siege in the winter, and continued it through that whole season. Many gallant deeds were performed there by sea and land, for Roderigo le Roux, don Fernando de Castille, Ambrose de Boccanegra and Peter Bascle, lay at anchor before Bayonne with two hundred vessels, and gave sufficiency of employment to its inhabitants. The governor of the town at the time was a right valiant knight from England called sir Matthew Gournay.

His good sense and prowess were, as I have been informed, of great assistance to the townsmen. I have heard from some of those who were besieged, that the Spaniards would have succeeded in their attempt on Bayonne, had not a great mortality afflicted their army, so that out of five who were taken ill three died.

King Henry had with him a necromancer from Toledo, who declared that the whole air was poisoned

soned and corrupted, and that no remedy could be had for it without risking the death of all. In consequence of this decision, the king broke up the siege; but the Spaniards and Bretons had conquered a number of small forts and castles in the adjacent country, into which they entered; and the king went to refresh himself at la Coulongne\*. He sent his constable, with ten thousand men, to lay siege to Pampeluna.

In that city were the viscount de Castillon, the lord de Lescut and le Basle, with two hundred lances in the whole, who carefully guarded the place. The king of Navarre, who had but lately returned from England, resided at Tudelle, impatiently expecting the succours which were to come to him from England, and which indeed had been ordered; for, by directions from the king and council, the lord Neville and sir Thomas de Termes † were at Plymouth, or in that neighbourhood, with about one thousand men at arms and two thousand archers, and were laying in their stores for the voyage to Bourdeaux; but they had not met with a passage according to their wishes.

With regard to the great army under the command of the duke of Lancaster, at last it landed near to St. Malo: news of which was soon carried to the Breton lords of the French party, and immediately the viscount de Belliere, sir Henry de Malatrait and the lord de Combor left their habi-

---

\* La Coulongne. Sala calls it Calongne. Q. if not Orogne.

† De Termes. Q. Sir Thomas Trivet.

tations,

tations, and flung themselves into St. Malo with two hundred men at arms, to the great joy of Morfonace the governor, who otherwise would have been hardly pushed.

END OF VOL. IV.













the 1990s, the number of people in the UK who are aged 65 and over has increased by 1.5 million, and the number of people aged 75 and over has increased by 1.2 million (Office of National Statistics 1999).

There is a growing awareness of the need to address the needs of older people in the community. The Department of Health (1999) has published a strategy for older people, which sets out a vision for the future of older people's services. The strategy is based on the following principles:

- Older people should be able to live independently in their own homes for as long as possible.
- Older people should be able to access the services and support they need to live independently.
- Older people should be able to participate in the decisions that affect their lives.

The strategy also sets out a number of key objectives for the future of older people's services, including:

- To ensure that older people have access to the services and support they need to live independently.
- To ensure that older people are able to participate in the decisions that affect their lives.
- To ensure that older people are able to live independently for as long as possible.

The strategy is a key document for the future of older people's services in the UK. It sets out a vision for the future of older people's services, and provides a framework for the development of policies and services to meet the needs of older people.

The strategy is based on the following principles:

- Older people should be able to live independently in their own homes for as long as possible.
- Older people should be able to access the services and support they need to live independently.
- Older people should be able to participate in the decisions that affect their lives.

The strategy also sets out a number of key objectives for the future of older people's services, including:

- To ensure that older people have access to the services and support they need to live independently.
- To ensure that older people are able to participate in the decisions that affect their lives.
- To ensure that older people are able to live independently for as long as possible.